# vinchin

# VINCHIN BACKUP & RECOVERY v6.7

# Admin User Guide

2022/07

成都云祺科技有限公司 Chengdu Vinchin Technology Co.,Ltd.







Partner Independent Software Vendor

# Table of Contents

Introduction	5
Product Overview	5
Supported Environments Virtual Platform (VM Backup) Operating System (File Backup)	6
Database (Database Backup)	6
Getting Started	7
Web Console	7
System Login	8
System License	9
Install Backup Plugin	10
Hyper-V Backup Plug-in Installation	
Citrix Hypervisor/XenServer Backup Plugin Installation	15
XCP-ng Backup Plugin Installation	
Sangfor HCI Backup Plugin Installation	
OpenStack Backup Plugin Installation	
Red Hat RHV/oVirt Backup Plugin Installation	20
Oracle Linux Virtualization Manager (OLVM) Backup Plugin Installation	21
H3C UIS/CAS Backup Plugin Installation	22
ZStack Backup Plugin Installation	23
Add Virtual Infrastructure	24
Add VMware vSphere Virtual Platform	25
Add Microsoft Hyper-V Virtual Platform	26
Add Citrix Hypervisor/Citrix XenServer/XCP-ng Virtual Platform	27
Add RHV/oVirt/OLVM Virtual Platform	
Add OpenStack Virtual Platform	
Add Sangfor HCI Virtual Platform	
Add H3C UIS/CAS Virtual Platform	
Add Huawei FusionCompute Virtual Platform	
Add ZStack Cloud Virtual Platform	
Authorize Virtual Infrastructure	
Add Storages	35
Storage Types	35
Storage Usage	41
Usage Alert	41
Data Importing and Storage Formatting	

Informational	
Dashboard	44
Monitor Center	
Jobs	46
Alerts	
Logs	
Reports	51
VM Backup	53
Backup	53
Virtual Machines	53
Create Backup Job	54
Backup Job Operations	64
VM Restore	65
Create Restore Job	65
Restore Job Operations	68
Instant Restore	70
Create Instant Restore Job	
Instant Restore Job Operations	72
VM Migration	
Granular Restore	75
Create Granular Restore Job	75
Granular Restore Job Operations	75
Backup Data	77
View Backup Data	77
Retention Tags	
Delete Backup Data	
Virtual Infrastructure	80
Add Virtual Infrastructure	80
Virtual Infrastructure Management	
Backup Proxy	
Database Backup	
SQL Server Database Backup and Restore	83
Install Database Backup Agent	
Register Database Backup Agent	86
SQL Server Database Backup	88
Database Restore	92
Database Backup Data	95
MySQL Database Backup and Restore	
Install Database Backup Agent	

Register Database Backup Agent	99
MySQL Database Backup	
Database Restore	105
Database Backup Data	108
Oracle Database Backup and Restore	
Install Database Backup Agent	110
Register Database Backup Agent	113
Oracle Database Backup	116
Database Restore	121
Database Backup Data	124
PostgreSQL Database Backup and Restore	126
Install Database Backup Agent	126
Register Database Backup Agent	127
PostgreSQL Database Backup	129
Database Restore	134
Database Backup Data	136
File Backup	138
Install File Backup Agent	138
Windows	138
Linux	140
Register File Backup Agent	142
File Backup	
Create File Backup Job	143
File Backup Job Operations	145
File Restore	145
File Backup Data	147
Backup Copy	148
Backup Copy	
Create Backup Copy Job	
Copy Job Operations	151
Copy Restore	152
Copy Data	
Copy Data for VM Backup	154
Copy Data for Database Backup	155
Copy Data for File Backup	155
Backup Archive	157
Archive	
Create Archive Job	
Archive Job Operations	160

Archive Restore	
Archive Data	
Resources	
Backup Node	
Storage	
Add Storage	
Manage Storages	
LAN-Free	
Strategy Templates	
System	
System Settings	
Network Settings	
Time Settings	
Notifications	
Security Settings	
Restart & Shutdown	
Upgrade	
Data Visualization	
System Tools	
Configuration Backup	
User Management	
Users	
Groups	
Roles	
Domain Server	
Account Settings	
User Information	
Change Password	
Lock Screen	
About	
Logout	

# Introduction

#### **Product Overview**

Vinchin Backup & Recovery is an easy-to-use, secured and reliable virtual machine data protection software designed to support multiple hypervisors including VMware vSphere, Microsoft Hyper-v, Citrix XenServer, RedHat Virtualization and open-source KVM under different virtual environments. It is an image-based agentless backup product which can be seamlessly integrated with your existing virtualization environments.

Vinchin Backup & Recovery supports Web UI management which allows users to manage & monitor any of their backup/restore tasks on either PC, mobile or tablet device. Flexible backup schedules set by daily, weekly, monthly let the backup jobs run as scheduled without system manager. All you need to do is to pre-set the job schedule when first running the software. Meanwhile, the Retention Policy helps users "save the valid" and "delete the expired" backed up data, so as to ensure the continuous operation of the backup jobs and at the same time save data repository space. When a disaster occurs causing the damage of the virtual machines, you only need to choose the latest restore point and specify a target host to restore to, the virtual machines will be recovered to the pre-disaster status. To help the administrators monitor and review their backup & restore jobs, Vinchin Backup & Recovery supports current jobs view, history jobs review, and system logs review & management etc.

There are 3 infrastructure components (Vinchin Backup & Recovery products) that can be used to construct your data center backup infrastructure.

- Vinchin Backup & Recovery Server
- Vinchin Backup & Recovery Node
- Vinchin Backup & Recovery Proxy

Among these 3 infrastructure components, Vinchin Backup & Recovery Server (hereinafter called Vinchin Backup Server) is the primary infrastructure component which needs to be installed to protect your virtual and hybrid environments. Vinchin Backup & Recovery Node (hereinafter called Vinchin Backup Node), Vinchin Backup & Recovery Proxy (hereinafter called Vinchin Backup Proxy) are optional components.

Vinchin Backup Node is needed only for backup and recovery of large-scale virtual infrastructures. It is used to decentralize the work load of the Backup Server.

Vinchin Backup Proxy is dedicated for VMware vSphere virtual infrastructure without a Storage Area Network (SAN). It needs to be installed on the vSphere ESX/ESXi server as a virtual machine, to improve the backup and restore efficiency.

# Supported Environments

#### Virtual Platform (VM Backup)

- VMware vSphere: 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, 6.7, 7.0(U1, U2, U3)
- Microsoft Hyper-V Server: 2012, 2012R2, 2016, 2019, Windows 10 (Desktop)
- Microsoft Hyper-V on Windows Server: 2012, 2012 R2, 2016, 2019
- Citrix XenServer: 6.x, 7.x
- Citrix Hypervisor: 8.0, 8.1, 8.2
- XCP-ng: 7.4, 7.5, 7.6, 8.0, 8.1, 8.2
- RHV: 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4
- oVirt: 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4, 4.5
- OpenStack: M to W with Centralized or Distributed storage
- Sangfor HCI: 5.x, 6.0.1, 6.0.1R1, 6.2.0, 6.3.0, 6.7.0, 6.7.0R2
- Oracle Linux Virtualization Manager (OLVM): 4.3, 4.4
- Huawei FusionCompute (KVM): 6.5.1, 8.0.0, 8.0.1
- H3C UIS: E0606, E0611, E0716, E0720, E0721, E0750
- H3C CAS: E0506, E0526, E0530, E0535, E0706, E0709, E0710, E0718, E0730
- ZStack: 3.5, 3.7, 3.8, 3.9, 3.10, 4.0.1, 4.3.0, 4.3.28, 4.4.16

#### **Operating System (File Backup)**

- Windows Desktop: Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 10
- Windows Server: Server 2003, Server 2008, Server 2012, Server 2016, Server 2019
- RHEL (Red Hat Enterprise Linux): 6, 7, 8
- CentOS Linux: 6, 7, 8
- Debian Linux: 7 to 10
- Ubuntu Linux: 12 to 20

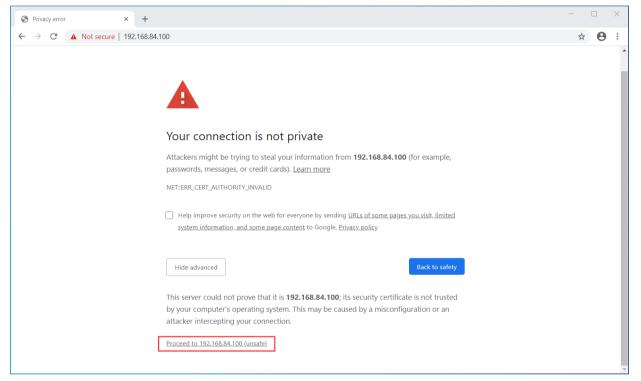
#### Database (Database Backup)

- Oracle Database: 11g, 12c, 18c, 19c, 20c, 21c
- MS SQL Server: 2008, 2012, 2014, 2016, 2017, 2019
- MySQL (Linux): 5.6, 5.7, 8.0, 8.0.26
- PostgreSQL (Linux): 12, 13, 14

# **Getting Started**

#### Web Console

To open Vinchin Backup Server web console, it is recommended to use Google Chrome web browser. In the browser address bar, enter the IP address that you have assigned to the Backup Server during installation. You'll probably see the below "**You connection is not private**" warning message.



Please click on **Advanced** button to show advanced options. Then click on "**Proceed to xxx.xxx.xxx (unsafe)**" to open the web console of Vinchin Backup Server. Now you should see the login screen as below.

vinchin
Vinchin Backup & Recove
🏯 Username
A Password
Remember password
Download Backup Plugin
You can contact the administrator to reset password.
Copyright © 2021 Vinchin Technology Co., Ltd. All F

Vinchin Backup & Recovery v6.7 | Admin User Guide

# System Login

Please open your web browser (Google Chrome is recommended), in the address bar, enter the IP address of the Vinchin Backup Server which you had assigned to Vinchin Backup Server during the installation. On the login screen, please use the below default credentials to log in.

#### Username: admin

Password: 123456

vinchin	
Vinchin Backup & Recovery	
🎍 Username	
Password	
Remember password	
Download Backup Plug-in Login ⊖	
Forgot password?	
You can contact the administrator to reset your password	

For the safety of Vinchin Backup Server, please change the default administrator password right after your first login, the password can be changed from **admin** > **Change Password** screen.

			909	Ĵ		요 admin ~
Change Password				Д M	y Inform	ation
Change Password				I Cł	hange P	assword
Original password *	•••••	~		₿ Lo	ock Scre	en
			🏳 About			
New password *	••••••	~		¢ Lo	acut	
Confirm new password *	•••••	~		~ LU	igout	
		Back Save				

#### Note

1. If you forgot your password:

For operator/auditor user, please contact your administrator to reset your password.

For administrator user, please contact Vinchin Support Team to reset your password.

2. Only VMware vSphere and Huawei FusionCompute do not require installation of backup plug-in. If you are using any other virtual platform, please download the corresponding backup plug-in from the login screen and install it on each virtual platform host that you need to protect.

# System License

When you have registered to download Vinchin Backup Server installation ISO image, a 60-day full featured trial license key will be sent, please go to **System** > **System License** page to upload the trial license.

Username :		Download Thumbprint     Lipicad License
CLicense :	Unlicensed	O Notice:
DExpiration :		Please read the following notices to get your Vinchin backup server licensed and to maintain the license valid.
		1. A trial license will be sent to your malibox right after you have registered to download Vinchin software from Vinchin website, if you didn't get the trial license please download and send the server thumbprint to Vinchin support team to get one.     2. To maintain your trial license valid during the trial period, please do not modify system time and do not modify server hardware (e.g. add or remove server NICs), if you have to do so, please contact Vinchin support team for advice.     3. To maintain your prid license valid, please do not modify server hardware (e.g. add or remove server NICs), if you have to do so, please contact Vinchin support team for advice.     4. If you got license exception. For trial license, please download and send new thumbprint to Vinchin support team. For paid license, please contact your Vinchin sales representative for help.
		<ul> <li>❸ Contacts : Vinchin Support</li> <li>֎ Website : https://www.vinchin.com/en</li> <li>↓ Tel : +86 400-9955-698</li> <li>☑ Email : technical_support@vinchin.com</li> </ul>

If you wish to buy perpetual license for Vinchin Backup & Recovery, please contact our sales team and send them the thumbprint. Please find our contact information on the last page on this document.

Once you had uploaded a perpetual license, your system license page should look like below.

Username : Edition :	Vinchin Enterprise	± Download Thumbprint     ± Upload License
License :	Perpetual License (Perpetual)	O Notice: Please read the following notices to get your Vinchin backup server licensed and to maintain the license valid. 1. A trial license will be sent to your mailbox right after you have registered to download Vinchin software from Vinchin website, if you didn't get the trial license
icense Type : M Backup : ile Backup : atabase Backup :	CPU Sockets CPU Sockets, 0 / 30 0/10 0/10	please download and send the server thumbprint to Vinchin support team to get one. 2. To maintain your trial license valid during the trial period, please do not modify system time and do not modify server hardware (e.g. add or remove server NICs), if you have to do so, please contact Vinchin support team for advice. 3. To maintain your paid license valid, please do not modify server hardware (e.g. add or remove server NICs), if you have to do so, please contact Vinchin support team for advice. 4. If you got license exception. For trial license, please download and send new thumbprint to Vinchin support team. For paid license, please contact your Vinchin sales representative for help.
		Contacts : Vinchin Support     Website : https://www.vinchin.com/en
		<ul> <li>Tel + 468 400-9955-698</li> <li>■ Email: technical support@vinchin.com</li> </ul>

The license type should be **Perpetual**.

The number of licensed virtual infrastructure CPU sockets for VM backup, the number of licensed hosts for file backup and the licensed hosts for database backup will be given in "used/licensed" format. The actual license info depends on the order you have placed.

# Install Backup Plugin

For VMware vSphere, Huawei FusionCompute(KVM) OLVM 4.4.8 and RHV/oVirt (4.4.7 or higher versions), backup plugin installation on the hypervisor level is not required, so you can simply skip this chapter now.

For Microsoft Hyper-V, Citrix Hypervisor/XenServer, XCP-ng, Sangfor HCl, OpenStack, RHV/oVirt (4.4.6 or older versions), H3C CAS/UIS and OLVM 4.3 virtual platforms, backup plugin needs to be installed on corresponding virtual platforms' hosts (hypervisor level) for VM backup by Vinchin Backup Server v6.5.

Backup plugins can be downloaded from the login page of Vinchin Backup Server web console.



Click on **Download Backup Plug-in** to download the plugins for corresponding virtual platform. For detailed instructions of how to download and install backup plugins for your virtual platforms, please refer to the below corresponding explanations.

#### Hyper-V Backup Plug-in Installation

To download backup plugin for Microsoft Hyper-V, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **Microsoft Hyper-V**, then click on the **Download** button to download.

V	inchin
Dowr	nload Backup Plug-in
Туре	VM Backup Plugin 🗸
Platform	Microsoft Hyper-V 🗸
	🕑 Back Download 📥

The downloaded backup plugin should be an executable exe file.

Name	Date	Туре	Size	Tags
🌏 vinchin-hyper-v-ag	12/20/2021 5:46 PM	Application	3,421 KB	

#### • Installation on Windows Server with Desktop Experience

The downloading could be done directly on Hyper-V host and SCVMM server, right click to run the installer with administrator privileges (In SCVMM environment, please use SCVMM domain user to install the backup plugin on both Hyper-V host and SCVMM server).

Microsoft Hyper-V Backup Plug-in Install Wizard	English $\checkmark$ — X
V	
To protect your Microsoft Hyper-V environment with Vinchin Backup & backup plug-in first.	Recovery, please install this
Quick Install	
I agree to the terms <u>EULA</u> User-defined Install	

Click on Quick Install to install it to the Windows Server.

In case of a Failover Clustering environment, you also need to modify the Backup Plugin service's login permission as a domain user with local administrator privileges, and then restart the Backup Plugin services.

Right click the **Start** icon, select **Run**, type services.msc in the Run box and press **Enter** to open the Windows Services Manager.

	Q 📄 🛛 📷 📄 🕨 🔲 🕪					
Services (Local)	O Services (Local)					
	HypervBackupAndRecoveryService	Name	^	Description	Status	Startup Tr
		Avper-V Heartbea	t Service	Monitors th		Manual (
	Stop the service	Hyper-V Host Cor		Provides su	Running	Manual (
	Pause the service Restart the service	Hyper-V PowerSh		Provides a		Manual (
	Restart the service		Desktop Virtualization	Provides a p		Manual (
		Hyper-V Time Syr	and the second second second second second	Synchronize		Manual (
			lachine Management	Manageme	Running	Automati
			Shadow Copy Requestor	-		Manual (
		HypervBackup	-m	T.	Running	Automati
		KE and AuthIF	Start	The IKEEXT	Running	Automati
		Interactive Ser	Stop	Enables use	-	Manual
		internet Conne	Pause	Provides ne		Manual (
		IP Helper	Resume	Provides tu	Running	Automati
		IPsec Policy Ac	Restart	Internet Pro	Running	Manual (
		KDC Proxy Ser	Restart	KDC Proxy S	-	Manual
		KtmRm for Dis	All Tasks >	Coordinates		Manual (
		Link-Layer Top	Refresh	Creates a N		Manual
		Local Session I	Kerresn	Core Windo	Running	Automati
		Microsoft (R) [	Properties	Diagnostics		Manual
		Microsoft Acc	Help	Enables use		Manual (
		Microsoft App	нер	Manages A		Disabled
		Microsoft iSCSI In	itiator Service	Manages In	Running	Automati
		<			-	>

Find the HypervBackupAndRecoveryService in the Services Manager, right click on this service and select Properties.

In the property settings dialog, select **Log On**, and set a domain user with local administrator privileges as below.

ile Antien Minu	Lista						
ile Action View	Help						
• 🔿   🔂   🖾	3 🗟   🛿 🗖	HyperyBackupAndRecov	veryService Properties (Local Compu	iter) X	]		
Services (Local)	O. Service						
	HypervBack	General Log On Reco	very Dependencies		cription	Status	Startup Tr
	пурегуваск	Log on as:				Status	
	Stop the serv	-			nitors th	<b>D</b>	Manual (
	Pause the set	Local System accourt			vides su vides a	Running	Manual ( Manual (
	Restart the se	Allow service to in	nteract with desktop		vides a vides a p		Manual (
		This account:	HYPERV2012\Administrator	rowse	chronize		Manual (
		Ũ			nageme	Running	Automati
		Password:	•••••		ordinates	Kunning	Manual (
		Confirm password:	•••••		oraniaces	Running	Automati
					IKEEXT	Running	Automati
					bles use	-	Manual
					vides ne		Manual (
					vides tu	Running	Automati
					ernet Pro	Running	Manual (
					C Proxy S		Manual
					ordinates		Manual (
					ates a N		Manual
					re Windo	Running	Automati
					gnostics		Manual
					ibles use		Manual (
			OK Cancel	Apply	nages A		Disabled
					nages In	Running	Automati
			<				>

When done apply the changes and then restart the service.

ction View					
ces (Local)	Services (Local)				
	HypervBackupAndRecoveryService	Name	Description	Status	Startup T
		Hyper-V Heartbeat Service	Monitors th		Manual (
	Stop the service	Hyper-V Host Compute Service	Provides su	Running	Manual (
	Pause the service Restart the service	Hyper-V PowerShell Direct Service	Provides a		Manual (
		Hyper-V Remote Desktop Virtualization	Provides a p		Manual (
		Ryper-V Time Synchronization Service	Synchronize		Manual (
		Arrow Wirtual Machine Management	Manageme	Running	Automati
		Request Wolume Shadow Copy Request	or Coordinates		Manual (
		Research HypervBackupAndResearch Section		Running	Automati
		KE and AuthIP IPsec Start	EEXT	Running	Automati
		Interactive Services D Stop	s use		Manual
		Internet Connection Pause	es ne		Manual (
		IP Helper Resume	es tu	Running	Automati
		IPsec Policy Agent Restart	et Pro	Running	Manual (
		KDC Proxy Server serv	roxy S		Manual
		KtmRm for Distribute All Tasks	> inates		Manual (
		Link-Layer Topology Refresh	s a N		Manual
		Cocal Session Manage	Vindo	Running	Automati
		Microsoft (R) Diagnos Properties	ostics		Manual
		Microsoft Account Si Help	s use		Manual (
		Microsoft App-V Cliel.	ges A		Disabled
		Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service	Manages In	Running	Automati 🗸
	Extended Standard /				

#### • Silent Mode Installation

If you are running Hyper-V natively on host hardware or within the Windows Server Core, you can install the backup plugin in silent mode.

To copy the installer to the Hyper-V host or Windows Server, you can use a USB flash drive to copy the installer to the Hyper-V host or Windows Server Core.

Or you can share the installer from your Windows PC, then from the Hyper-V host or Windows Server Core command lines to copy the installer.

To copy the shared installer, please first use the below command to establish a connection to the Windows PC.

net use \\ip\_of\_windows\_pc\ipc\$ pass /user:username

"ip\_of\_windows\_pc" should be the exact IP address of the Windows PC which shares the installer.

"pass" should be the password of the Windows PC user.

"username" should be the username sharing the installer on the Windows PC.

Then use below command to copy the backup plugin installer to the Hyper-V host or Windows Server Core.

copy \\ip\_of\_windows\_pc\foler\file\_name1 \path\file\_name2

"ip\_of\_windows\_pc" should be the exact IP address of the Windows PC which shares the installer.

"folder" should be the exact shared folder name on the Windows PC.

"file\_name1" should be the exact backup plugin installer file name, in this case it should be "vinchin-hyper-vagent.windows.6.5.0.15363.exe".

"path" should be the full path on Hyper-V host or Windows Server Core where you want to save the installer, e.g. "C:\Users\Administrator\Downloads".

"file\_name2" can be a new file name or you can type the original file name to be saved on the Hyper-V host or Windows Server Core.

To install the backup plugin, please go to the directory where you copied the installer, then use the command below.

vinchin-hyper-v-agent.windows.6.5.0.15363.exe /verysilent

After installation, please check the backup plugin service connection status.

netstat -a

If you got active TCP connection on port 20090 and 20100 as shown below, then the backup plugin is up running normally.

TCP	0.0.0.0:20090	WIN-L2MSB093K5D:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:20100	WIN-L2MSB093K5D:0	LISTENING

#### Citrix Hypervisor/XenServer Backup Plugin Installation

To download backup plugin for Citrix Hypervisor/XenServer, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **Citrix XenServer/Citrix Hypervisor**, then in the **Version** dropdown list, please select the exact virtual platform version, and then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.

V	inchin
Dow	nload Backup Plugin
Туре	VM Backup Plugin 🗸
Platform	Citrix XenServer/Citrix H 🐱
Version	6.2 ✓ 6.2 6.5/7.x/8.x ⓒ Back Download ♣
	6.5/7.x/8.x

The downloaded file (version 6.5/7.x/8.x for example) should be an RPM package.

Please download the corresponding version of backup plugin and upload to the XenServer pool Master and each Slave of the pool.

To upload the backup plugin package to the XenServer Master/Slave node from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter the Master/Slave node command line interface and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then run the below command to install.

rpm -i vxe-backup-agent-6.7.0-19890.xe.6.5.0.and.7.0.0.x86\_64.rpm

Use command below to uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

rpm -e vxe-backup-agent

#### XCP-ng Backup Plugin Installation

To download backup plugin for XCP-ng, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **XCP-ng**, then in the **Version** dropdown list, please select the exact virtual platform version, and then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.

V	inchin	
Dowr	load Backup Plug-in	
Туре	VM Backup Plugin 🗸 🗸	
Platform	XCP-ng 🗸	
Version	7.x/8.x 🗸	
	🕑 Back Download 🛓	

The downloaded file should be an RPM package.

Please download the corresponding version of backup plugin and upload to the XCP-ng pool Master and each Slave in the pool.

To upload the backup plugin package to the XCP-ng Master/Slave node from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter the Master/Slave node command line interface and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then run the below command to install.

rpm -i vxe-backup-agent-6.7.0-19890.xe.6.5.0.and.7.0.0.x86\_64.rpm

Use command below to uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

rpm -e vxe-backup-agent

#### Sangfor HCI Backup Plugin Installation

To download backup plugin for Sangfor HCI, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **Sangfor HCI**, then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.

V	vinchin	
Dowr	nload Backup Pl	ugin
Туре	VM Backup Plugin	~
Platform	Sangfor HCI	~
Version	5.x/6.x	~

The downloaded file should be a .tar.gz package.

Please upload the downloaded backup plugin to the Master node and each other clustered node in the pool of Sangfor HCI.

To upload the backup plugin package to the Sangfor HCI Master/Slave node from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter the Master/Slave node command line interface and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then use below command to decompress the .tar.gz package.

tar -zxvf vinchin-kvm-backup-patch-6.7.0.19890-Debian.7-x86\_64.tar.gz

Enter the backup plugin package folder.

cd vinchin-kvm-backup-patch-6.7.0.19890-Debian.7-x86\_64

To install the backup plugin, run below command.

./kvm\_backup\_patch\_install

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

./kvm\_backup\_patch\_uninstall

#### **OpenStack Backup Plugin Installation**

To download backup plugin for OpenStack, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **OpenStack**, then in the **Version** dropdown list, please select the exact virtual platform version, and then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.



**Cloud (RHEL)** is for OpenStack on Red Hat Enterprise Linux. The downloaded backup plugin should be an RPM package.

Cloud (UBUNTU) is for OpenStack on Ubuntu Linux. The downloaded backup plugin should be a Deb package.

**Docker (RHEL)** is for OpenStack containerized with Docker on Red Hat Enterprise Linux. The downloaded plugin should be an RPM package.

**Docker (UBUNTU)** is for OpenStack containerized with Docker on Ubuntu Linux. The downloaded plugin should be a Deb package.

Please download the corresponding backup plugin and upload to the controller node (if there are multiple controller nodes, please upload and install the plugin on each of the controller nodes).

To upload the backup plugin package to the controller node from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter the command line interface of the controller node and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then run the below command to install.

Cloud (RHEL) install.

rpm -i vinchin-stack-patch-cloud-6.7.0.19890-1.el7.x86\_64.rpm

Cloud (RHEL) uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

rpm -e vinchin-stack-patch-cloud

Docker (RHEL) install.

rpm -i vinchin-stack-patch-docker-6.7.0.19890-1.el7.x86\_64.rpm

Docker (RHEL) uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

rpm -e vinchin-stack-patch-docker

Cloud (UBUNTU) install.

sudo dpkg -i vinchin-stack-patch-cloud-6.7.0.19890.Ubuntu.x86\_64.deb

Cloud (UBUNTU) uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

sudo dpkg -r vinchin-stack-patch-cloud

Docker (UBUNTU) install.

sudo dpkg -i vinchin-stack-patch-docker-6.7.0.19890.Ubuntu.x86\_64.deb

Docker (UBUNTU) uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

sudo dpkg -r vinchin-stack-patch-docker

#### Red Hat RHV/oVirt Backup Plugin Installation

To download backup plugin for Red Hat RHV or oVirt, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **Red Hat Virtualization** (**RHV**)/oVirt, then in the **Version** dropdown list, please select the exact virtual platform version, and then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.

Dow	nload Backı	up Plug	in
Туре	VM Backup PI	ugin	~
Platform	Red Hat Virtua	alization(R	~
Version	4.0-4.3(RHEL7	/CentOS7)	~
	4.0-4.3(RHEL7 4.4(RHEL8/Cer	A SCOUL SUPPORT	
	@ Back	Downloa	

The downloaded file should be a RPM package.

Please download the corresponding backup plugin and upload to each of the RHV/oVirt hosts (the backup plugin needs to be installed on all RHVH or oVirt hosts).

To upload the backup plugin package to the RHV/oVirt node from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter RHV/oVirt node command line interface and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then run the below command to install backup plugin.

yum install vinchin-stack-patch-cloud-6.7.0.19890-1.el7.x86\_64.rpm

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

```
rpm -e vinchin-stack-patch-cloud
```

Warning

1. Backup plugin should not be installed on the RHV/oVirt Engine.

2. If you are running RHV/oVirt 4.4.7 or higher versions, you can use ImageIO API for VM backup and restore, backup plugin installation is not required, otherwise please install backup plugin on RHVH or oVirt Hosts.

3. Please use 'yum' command to install the backup plugin instead of 'rpm' command.

#### Oracle Linux Virtualization Manager (OLVM) Backup Plugin Installation

To download backup plugin for Oracle Linux Virtualization Manager, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **Oracle Linux Virtualization Manager (OLVM)**, then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.

Download Backup Plugin Type VM Backup Plugin   Platform Oracle Linux Virtualizatic  Version 4.3(Oracle Linux7)  4.4(Oracle Linux8)  Back Download	V	inchin	]
Platform       Oracle Linux Virtualizatic         Version       4.3(Oracle Linux7)         4.3(Oracle Linux7)         4.4(Oracle Linux8)	Dowr	nload Backup Plugi	in
Version 4.3(Oracle Linux7) 4.3(Oracle Linux7) 4.4(Oracle Linux8)	Туре	VM Backup Plugin	~
4.3(Oracle Linux7) 4.4(Oracle Linux8)	Platform	Oracle Linux Virtualizatio	~
	Version	4.3(Oracle Linux7)	✓ d

The downloaded backup plugin should be an RPM package.

Please upload the downloaded backup plugin to the OLVM node (if there are multiple node hosts, please upload and install the plugin on each of the nodes).

To upload the backup plugin package to the OLVM node host(s) from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter the OLVM node command line interface and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then use below command to install the backup plugin.

yum install vinchin-stack-patch-cloud-6.7.0.19890-1.el7.x86\_64.rpm

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

```
rpm -e vinchin-stack-patch-cloud
```

#### Warning

1. Backup plugin should not be installed on the OLVM Engine.

2. Please use 'yum' command to install the backup plugin instead of 'rpm' command.

#### H3C UIS/CAS Backup Plugin Installation

To download backup plugin for H3C UIS/CAS, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **H3C UIS/CAS**, then in the **Version** dropdown list, please select the exact virtual platform version, and then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.

V	inchi	n
Dow	nload Backup Plu	ıgin
Туре	VM Backup Plugin	~
Platform	H3C UIS/CAS	~
Version	CAS 5.X/UIS 6.0 CAS 5.X/UIS 6.0 CAS 7.X/UIS 6.5/7.0	~
	⊕ Back Down	load 🚣

The downloaded backup plugin should be a .tar.gz package.

Please upload the downloaded backup plugin to the H3C UIS/CAS node (if there are multiple node hosts, please upload and install the plugin on each of the nodes).

To upload the backup plugin package to the node hosts from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter the H3C node command line interface and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then use below command to decompress the .tar.gz package.

tar -zxvf vinchin-kvm-backup-patch-6.7.0.19890-RHEL.7-x86\_64.tar.gz

Enter the backup plugin package folder.

cd vinchin-kvm-backup-patch-6.7.0.19890-RHEL.7-x86\_64

To install the backup plugin, run below command.

./kvm\_backup\_patch\_install

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

./kvm\_backup\_patch\_uninstall

#### ZStack Backup Plugin Installation

If your ZStack backend storage is Ceph, you could choose to run LAN-free backup without installing backup plugin on the ZStack hosts, otherwise please follow the below steps to install backup plugin.

To download backup plugin for ZStack, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **ZStack Cloud**, then in the **Version** dropdown list, please select the exact virtual platform version, and then click on the **Download** button to download the backup plugin.

V	incl	nin
Dow	nload Backı	ıp Plugin
Туре	VM Backup Plu	ugin 🗸
Platform	ZStack Cloud	~
Version	3.x/4.x 3.x/4.x ⊛ Back	✓ Download ±

The downloaded backup plugin should be an RPM package.

Please upload the downloaded backup plugin to the node hosts (if there are multiple node hosts, please upload and install the plugin on each of the nodes).

To upload the backup plugin package to the ZStack node host(s) from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, enter the ZStack node command line interface and enter the directory where you uploaded the backup plugin, and then use below command to install the backup plugin.

yum install vinchin-stack-patch-cloud-6.7.0.19890-1.el7.x86\_64.rpm

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, backup/restore jobs will fail).

rpm -e vinchin-stack-patch-cloud

# Add Virtual Infrastructure

Before you start to backup and recover the VMs on your virtual platforms, you need to add your virtual platform(s) to Vinchin Backup Server first.

Go to **VM Backup** > **Virtual Infrastructure** page. And click on Add button to add a virtual platform to the Backup Server.

Add Virtual Infrastructure	
Platform *	~
	Select a virtual platform to backup.
IP/Domain *	192.168.1.110
	To backup individual host, please enter its IP address or domain name. To backup multiple hosts, please enter IP address or domain name of corresponding VM Manager server (e.g. vCenter for VMware vSphere).
Username *	
	Username of target host/VM Manager Server.
Password *	
	Password of target host/VM Manager Server.
Name	
	Type a name for this newly added virtual infrastructure.
	Cancel OK

In the **Platform** dropdown list, select the virtual platform you are using. Then on the same page, the corresponding settings of registering your virtual platform to Vinchin Backup Server will be listed here.

#### Add VMware vSphere Virtual Platform

Add Virtual Infrastructure		
Platform *	VMware vSphere	~
	Select a virtual platform to backup.	
IP/Domain *	192.168.124.10	~
	To backup individual host, please enter its IP address or dor To backup multiple hosts, please enter IP address or domain corresponding VM Manager server (e.g. vCenter for VMwar	n name of
Username *	administrator@vsphere.local	~
	Username of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Password *		~
	Password of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Name	vSphere7	~
	Type a name for this newly added virtual infrastructure.	
	Cancel OK	

If you are using VMware vSphere, In the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **VMware vSphere**.

In the **IP/Domain** field, please type in the IP address of the vCenter server. Or if you are using standalone ESXi server, please type in the IP address of the ESXi server.

In the **Username** field, type in the user name in vsphere.local domain, e.g. administrator@vsphere.local. To add a standalone ESXi server, please type in root user name here.

In the Password field, type in the password for administrator@vsphere.local or the password for ESXi root user.

#### Add Microsoft Hyper-V Virtual Platform

Add Virtual Infrastructure		
Microsoft Hyper-V A backup plugin is require console login page Download Backup Plugin, a		want to backup. Please download the corresponding backup plugin from the Vinchin web
Platform *	Microsoft Hyper-V	Download Backup Plugin
	Select a virtual platform to backup.	Sonnoud Baskep r logar
Type *	Standalone Server	,
	Select the type of server you want to add.	
IP/Domain *	192.168.101.23	
	To backup individual host, please enter its IP address or domain name To backup multiple hosts, please enter IP address or domain name of corresponding VM Manager server (e.g. vCenter for VMware vSphere)	
Username *	administrator 🗸	
	Username of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Password *		
	Password of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Name	Hyper-V	
	Type a name for this newly added virtual infrastructure.	

If you are using Microsoft Hyper-V, in the Platform dropdown list, please select Microsoft Hyper-V.

In the **Type** field, please select your Hyper-V deployment type.

Cancel

In the **IP/Domain** field, enter the SCVMM server IP if your Hyper-V virtual infrastructure is managed by a SCVMM management server; enter the cluster IP if your Hyper-V virtual infrastructure is deployed as Failover Cluster; enter the IP address of the Hyper-V server or Windows Server with Hyper-V Role, if it's a standalone deployment.

In the **Username** field, enter the domain user with administrator permissions of the SCVMM server and all other hosts if your Hyper-V virtual infrastructure is managed by a SCVMM management server; enter the domain user with local administrator permissions of all clustered hosts if it's a failover clustering environment; enter the administrator username if it's a standalone deployment.

In the **Password** field enter the corresponding password of the username you specified above.

#### Add Citrix Hypervisor/Citrix XenServer/XCP-ng Virtual Platform

If you are using Citrix Hypervisor/XenServer or XCP-ng virtual platform, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **Citrix XenServer/Citrix Hypervisor** or **XCP-ng** accordingly.

The principle of registering Citrix XenServer/Citrix Hypervisor and XCP-ng to Vinchin Backup Server is the same, below is an example of registering Citrix Hypervisor 8.2 to Vinchin backup server, XCP-ng should be registered the same way.

Add Virtual Infrastructure		
	o plugin is required to be installed in the hypervisor layer of the target ackup Plugin, and install it on target host accordingly.	host which you want to backup. Please download the corresponding backup plugin from
Platform *	Citrix XenServer/Citrix Hypervisor	Download Backup Plugin
IP/Domain *	Select a virtual platform to backup.	
ir/Joillain	To backup individual host, please enter its IP address or domain name. To backup multiple hosts, please enter IP address or domain name of corresponding VM Manager server (e.g. vCenter for VMware vSphere).	
Username *	root  Vsername of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Password *	······································	
	Password of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Name	CitrixHypervisor8.2	
	Type a name for this newly added virtual infrastructure.	
	Cancel OK	

In the IP/Domain field, the IP address of the pool master should be used.

In the **Username** field, the root user should be used.

In the **Password** field, should use the password for root user.

#### Add RHV/oVirt/OLVM Virtual Platform

If you are using RHV or oVirt, please select **Red Hat Virtualization(RHV)/oVirt** in the **Platform** dropdown list; if you are using OLVM, please select **Oracle Linux Virtualization Manager (OLVM)**. As the settings of adding RHV, oVirt and OLVM are the same, here we will take oVirt as an example.

Add Virtual Infrastructure		
	olugin is required to be installed in the hypervisor layer of the target ho ackup Plugin, and install it on target host accordingly.	st which you want to backup. Please download the corresponding backup plugin from
Platform *	Red Hat Virtualization(RHV)/oVirt	Download Backup Plugin
	Select a virtual platform to backup.	
IP/Domain *	192.168.124.50	
	To backup individual host, please enter its IP address or domain name. To backup multiple hosts, please enter IP address or domain name of corresponding VM Manager server (e.g. vCenter for VMware vSphere).	
Username *	admin@Internal 🗸	
	Username of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Password *	······ ·	
	Password of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Name	oVirt4.4.9	
	Type a name for this newly added virtual infrastructure.	
Engine Backup	Off <b>1</b>	
	Cancel OK	

In the **IP/Domain** field, the IP address or domain name of the oVirt engine should be used.

In the **Username** field, the default username is "admin" and it should be used with the "internal" domain, so you should probably type "admin@internal" here.

If it's a fresh new installation of oVirt 4.5.1 virtual environment, Keycloak is configured as a default SSO provider for oVirt Engine, you should use "admin@ovirt@internalsso" as the username. Upgrading from older versions to oVirt 4.5.1 does not change the username.

In the **Password** field, please type in the password for admin that you specified during the installation.

As for **Engine Backup**, it is used to backup the oVirt engine metadata. To enable engine backup, you need to use root permission of the oVirt engine.

Engine Backup	On		
Root	root	~	
Root Password		~	test connection
Daily Backup at	23:00:00		
Restore Points	30 ^ ~		
Backup Node	vinchin65.com(192.168.120.9)	~	
Backup Storage	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :499.75GB, Free S	pa 🗸	

And the backup strategy and backup storage options can be configured as per your requirements.

#### Add OpenStack Virtual Platform

To add OpenStack virtual platform, please select <b>OpenStack</b> in the <b>Platform</b> drop
---

Add Virtual Infrastructure			
A OpenStack A backup plugin is required to be console login page Download Backup Plugin,			backup. Please download the corresponding backup plugin from the Vinchin web
Platform *	OpenStack	~	Download Backup Plugin
	Select a virtual platform to backup.		
IP/Domain *	http://192.168.64.39	~	
	To backup individual host, please ente To backup multiple hosts, please ente corresponding VM Manager server (e.	r IP address or domain name of	
Port	public 🗸	5000	
Project *	admin	×	
	Enter the correct project		
Keystone Version *	Version3	~	
	keystone service API version		
Domain *	Default	×	
	Domain for V3 authenticate		
Username *	admin	×	
	Username of target host/VM Manager	r Server.	
Password *		~	
	Password of target host/VM Manager	Server.	
Name	OpenStack	ual infractructure	
	Type a name for this newly added virtu	ແລະ ກາກເລວມ ປີບັນນາຍ.	
	Cancel OK		

In the IP/Domain field, please enter the "kolla\_internale\_vip\_address".

In the **Port** field, you may need to use the Public API endpoint, and please use the default port number, otherwise you need to check the keystone identity services to determine the port number.

In the **Project** field, enter a project name which its VMs need to be backed up.

The Keystone Version should be the version that matches your real deployment.

In the **Domain** field, enter the Keystone domain and corresponding user credentials.

## Add Sangfor HCI Virtual Platform

To add Sangfor HCI	l, in the <b>Platform</b> dr	opdown list, plea	ase select Sangfor HCI	, then com	plete the below settings.

Add Virtual Infrastructure		
A Sangfor HCI A backup plugin is required to be console login page Download Backup Plugin, a		t to backup. Please download the corresponding backup plugin from the Vinchin web
Platform *	Sangfor HCI	Download Backup Plugin
	Select a virtual platform to backup.	
IP/Domain *	192.168.64.17	•
	To backup individual host, please enter its IP address or domain nan To backup multiple hosts, please enter IP address or domain name corresponding VM Manager server (e.g. vCenter for VMware vSphe	f
Username *	admin	•
	Username of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Password *		
	Password of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Name	SangforHCI	•
	Type a name for this newly added virtual infrastructure.	
	Cancel OK	

In the **IP/Domain** field, please type in the IP address of the Sangfor HCI master node, or if it's cluster deployment, the virtual IP of the cluster must be used.

In the Username and Password fields, type in the super admin user name and password.

If you are running Sangfor HCI 6.3, please enable SSH port from Sangfor HCI web console on the System -> Port Management page.

And if you had enabled "Allow SSH Access by IP Address" option, please add Vinchin backup server's IP address into the IP Address list at the bottom of this page. Otherwise Vinchin will fail to backup the UEFI boot mode VMs.

# Add H3C UIS/CAS Virtual Platform

To add H3C UIS/CAS, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **H3C UIS/CAS**, then complete the below settings.

Add Virtual Infrastructure		
		hypervisor layer of the target host which you want to backup. Please download in page <b>Download Backup Plugin</b> , and install it on target host accordingly.
Platform *	H3C UIS/CAS	Download Backup Plugin
	Select a virtual platform to backup	ip.
IP/Domain *	192.168.64.18:8080	~
	To backup individual host, please address or domain name. To backup multiple hosts, please or domain name of corresponding server (e.g. vCenter for VMware v	e enter IP address g VM Manager
Username *	admin	*
	Username of target host/VM Man	nager Server.
Password *	•••••	✓
	Password of target host/VM Mana	ager Server.
Name	H3C	~
	Type a name for this newly added infrastructure.	d virtual
	Cancel OK	

In the **IP/Domain** field, please type in the IP address of the H3C UIS/CAS server (e.g., *server-ip*:**8080**). In the **Username** and **Password** fields, type in the administrative user's name and password.

#### Add Huawei FusionCompute Virtual Platform

To add Huawei FusionCompute, in the Platform dropdown list, please select Huawei FusionCompute KV	<b>M</b> , then
complete the following settings.	

Add Virtual Infrastructure		
Platform *	Huawei EusionCompute KVM	
Flation	Huawei FusionCompute KVM   Select a virtual platform to backup.	
	Select a virtual platform to backup.	
IP/Domain *	192.168.83.202:7443	
	To backup individual host, please enter its IP address or domain name. To backup multiple hosts, please enter IP address or domain name of	
	corresponding VM Manager server (e.g. vCenter for VMware vSphere).	
Username *		
Osername *	gesysman 🗸	
	Username of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Password *	······ 🗸	
	Password of target host/VM Manager Server.	
Name	Huawei FusionCompute	
Name	Type a name for this newly added virtual infrastructure.	
	rype a name for this newly added villual initiastructure.	
	Cancel OK	

In the **IP/Domain** field, type in the IP address and port number of the FusionCompute Virtual Resource Manager (VRM) server, e.g., server\_ip:7443.

In the **Username** field, the northbound interface authentication account should be used, the default username used by FusionCompute is "gesysman".

In the **Password** field, please type in the northbound interface authentication account password.

# Add ZStack Cloud Virtual Platform

To add ZStack Cloud virtual platform, in the **Platform** dropdown list, please select **ZStack Cloud**, then complete the below settings.

			the target host which you want to backup. Please download the ckup Plugin, and install it on target host accordingly.
Platform *	ZStack Cloud	~	Download Backup Plugin
	Select a virtual platform to backup.		
IP/Domain *	172.18.15.2:8080	~	
	To backup individual host, please enter i address or domain name. To backup multiple hosts, please enter II or domain name of corresponding VM M server (e.g. vCenter for VMware vSpher	P address lanager	
Username *	admin	~	
	Username of target host/VM Manager S	erver.	
Password *	•••••	~	
	Password of target host/VM Manager Se	erver.	
Name	ZStack	~	
	Type a name for this newly added virtua infrastructure.	]	
	Cancel OK		

In the **IP/Domain** field, please type in the IP address of the ZStack management node (e.g., *server-ip*:**8080**). In the **Username** and **Password** fields, type in the administrative user's name and password.

#### Authorize Virtual Infrastructure

Once completed the settings of corresponding virtual platform, click on **OK** to add the infrastructure to Vinchin Backup Server.

🛞 Vi	rtual I	nfrastructure List													
<b>+</b> A	dd G	🖁 Edit 🔋 💼 Delete	5	Engine Backup Dat	a					Au	to-r	efresh in every	60	minute(s)	🖺 Save
										Search I	by n	ame	Search	Q Advan	ced search
	No.	IP Address		Name		Platform	Version  🍦	Username  🍦	Sync Time		•	Status	Opera	ation	
	1	192.168.64.29		vmware vsphere		VMware vSphere	6.7.0	administrator@vsphere.lo cal	2020-09-25 11:4	2:44		Unauthorized	<b>2</b> Sy	vnc 🗸 Au	th
									Page	< 1		of 1   View	10 🗸	records   Tota	al 1 record(s)

If your license type is per CPU socket, then the virtual infrastructure status will be **Unauthorized**, you are unable to perform backups with unauthorized virtual infrastructure. If your license type is per virtual machine or per GB storage capacity, then the virtual infrastructure status will be **Authorized** and you don't have to manually authorize the virtual infrastructure.

To authorize the virtual infrastructure for Vinchin Backup Server to backup VMs on the virtual infrastructure, please click on **Auth** button.

🗸 A	uthorize 🗙 Una	uthorize	CPU Socket(s): Total 30, Au	thorized 0, Unauth	orized 30	
1	Host Name 🔺	Host IP	Virtual Infrastructure	Host Status 🝦	Number of CPUs 🝦	Status
~	192.168.1.110	192.168.1.110	vmware vsphere(192.168.64.29)	Online	2	Unauthorized
~	192.168.1.200	192.168.1.200	vmware vsphere(192.168.64.29)	Online	2	Unauthorized
~	host.21.com	host.21.com	vmware vsphere(192.168.64.29)	Online	2	Unauthorized
~	host.22.com	host.22.com	vmware vsphere(192.168.64.29)	Online	2	Unauthorized
~	host.23.com	host.23.com	vmware vsphere(192.168.64.29)	Online	2	Unauthorized

Select the hosts that you want to protect, then click on Authorize button.

No.	IP Address	Name	Platform  🍦	Version	Username  🍦	Sync Time	Status	Operation
1	192.168.64.29	vmware vsphere	VMware vSphere	6.7.0	administrator@vsphere.lo cal	2020-09-25 12:27:04	All Authorized	Sync 🗸 Auth

Page < 1 > of 1 | View 10 v records | Total 1 record(s)

After authorization, the virtual infrastructure status will be **All Authorized**. Now you should be able to backup the VMs on the authorized hosts.

#### Note

1. You can only backup the virtual machines running on the authorized hosts.

 It is recommended to get all hosts authorized within the virtual infrastructure, in case the VMs with HA enabled might automatically migrate from host to host, if the VM migrated to unauthorized host, the backup job might fail.
 VM backup requires the virtual infrastructure to be authorized (licensed), VM restore does not require virtual infrastructure to be authorized.

# Add Storages

A backup storage is an essential component that need to be added to Vinchin Backup Server before you can get started to backup the VMs in your virtual infrastructure.

To add storages, please go to Resources > Storage page, and click on Add button to add a desired storage.

Storage Settings			
	Storage Type *	Partition	~
		Select one of the Storage types.	
Nc	ode IP/Domain *	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	~
		The storage will be mounted to the selected backup node.	

In the **Storage Type** dropdown list, select the target storage type that you had prepared for backup/copy/archive backup data. The supported storage types including: partition, local disk, local directory, logical volume, Fibre Channel, iSCSI, NFS, CIFS, Off-site Storage, Cloud Storage. Among those storages, Off-site Storage is dedicated to store offsite backup copy data, while the Cloud Object Storage is dedicated to store backup archive data.

In the **Node IP/Domain** field, you can choose to add the storage from a specific node, by default, the storage will be added from the Vinchin Backup Server, if you had deployed Vinchin Backup Node and want to add the storage from the Backup Node then select that node in the dropdown list.

#### Warning

The following operations of adding storages to Vinchin Backup Server will involve formatting storages! Please make sure that you had made copies of the data on the storages before adding to Vinchin Backup Server!

#### Storage Types

#### Disk Partition

An unmounted local partition on the Backup Server or Backup Node can be used as Backup storage, Backup Copy storage and also Backup Archive storage.

To add a partition as backup/copy/archive storage, please select on which node the partition exists.

Storage Resource *		Name	Туре	Capacity
		/dev/sdc1	Disk Partition	100GB
Name	Partition1			
	Type a nar			

Vinchin Backup Server will recognize the partitions which are not yet mounted to the file system, choose the target partition from the **Storage Resource** list, and then give it a name to add it to Vinchin Backup Server as backup/copy/archive storage.

#### Local Disk

An unpartitioned local disks on the Backup Server or Backup Node can be used as Backup storage, Backup Copy storage and also Backup Archive storage.

To add a disk as backup/copy/archive storage, please select on which node the disk exists.

Storage Resource *		Name		Туре	Capacity
		/dev/sdc		Local Disk	100GB
	If there is p	partition in your storage resource, and you w	vant to save the partition data, p	lease select " Partition	n" from the Storage Type.
Name	If there is p		vant to save the partition data, p	lease select " Partition	n" from the Storage Type.

Vinchin Backup Server will recognize the disks which are not yet partitioned or which contains partitions but not yet mounted to the file system, choose the target disk from the Storage Resource list, and then give it a name to add it to Vinchin Backup Server as backup/copy/archive storage.

When you are adding a disk which contains partitions on that disk, you can choose **Format** to delete the partitions and all data, if you want to keep the partitions, please add the storage use **Partition** type instead of **Disk**.

• Add Storage		)
The storage to     /dev/sdc1	o be added /dev/sdc contains below partitions	
lost!	partitions in the storage will be formated and data v serve the data, please add the storage from [Partiti	
Format Storage	Format If format the storage, all data will be wiped	
	Cancel	ОК

#### Logical Volume

To add an unmounted logical volume to Vinchin Backup Server, please select on which node the logical volume exists, and Vinchin Backup Server will try to detect the storage.

Storage Resource *	✓ Name		Туре	Capacity
	~	/dev/mapper/vg0-lv1	LVM	499GB
Name	LVM1			
	Type a name fo	or the storage.		

The unmounted logical volume will be detected and displayed in the **Storage Resource** list. Please select the target logical volume to add to Vinchin Backup Server.

#### Local Directory

The local directories in the Backup Server or Backup Node file system can be used as backup/copy/archive storages. If you have allocated sufficient storage space to the Backup Server or Backup Node file system, and you want to store backup/copy/archive data in the native file system, you can use local directory.

The directories need to be created in the Backup Server or Backup Node file system before adding. Please add the directories through the command line interface of the backup server or backup node. For example, to create a directory named "backupdata" for backup storage in the "/home/" directory.

mkdir /home/backupdata

Then to add it as below.

Directory Path *	/home/backupdata
	Local directory path, e.g./path/directory
Name	backup storage
	Type a name for the storage.

In the Directory Path field, please type in the full path of the directory you have created.

#### • Fibre Channel

To add Fibre Channel storage to Vinchin Backup Server as backup/copy/archive storages, please select Fibre Channel in the Storage Type dropdown list, and then select the node on which the HBA interface card connects to the FC switch.

Storage Settings		
Storage Type *	Fibre Channel	~
	Select one of the Storage types.	
Node IP/Domain *	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	~
	The storage will be mounted to the selected backup node.	

Now Vinchin Backup Server will detect the fibre channel and the wwpn of the HBA interface card, use this information to map the LUN of the FC storage to Vinchin Backup Server. After this, add the FC storage again, and Vinchin Backup Server will detect the mapped LUN storage.

Fibre Channel	No.	Channel 🔺	wwnn	wwpn		Speed	Status
	1	host0	20:00:00:1b:32:81:6e:f1	21:00:00:	1b:32:81:6e:f1	4 Gbit	online
	Map the target FC LUN to the corresponding WWN.						
Storage Resource *		Name			Туре	Capacity	
	$\checkmark$	/dev/sdc			Fibre Channel	10TB	
	If there is partition in your storage resource, and you want to save the partition data, please select " Partition" from the Storage Type.						
Name	Fibre Cha	innel1					
	Type a name	for the storage.					

#### Note

To add FC storage, the added LUN will be formatted, all data in the LUN will be erased. If there's previous backup data in the LUN and you don't want to format it, please add this storage as Partition and then import the existing backup data.

#### • iSCSI

To add iSCSI storage, please select the target node, and the iSCSI qualified name (IQN) of the selected node will be given.

Storage Settings		
Storage Type	ISCSI	~
	Select one of the Storage types.	
Node IP/Domain *	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	~
	The storage will be mounted to the selected backup node.	
iSCSI Name	iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:b5fe85fbeba6	

Please use the IQN to map the LUN of the iSCSI storage to the backup server from the iSCSI storage server. After this, input the iSCSI storage server IP address here and click on **Scan Target** button to scan the target storage.

ISCSI server is connected. If multiple paths exist, you can ADD AN ADDRESS	iSCSI Server *		04.43 ess of the iSCSI server ork between the backu		3260 🗸			
		iSCSI server i can ADD AN A	s connected. If multiple ADDRESS					
	Target LUN *		Name	🔺 iqn			Туре	Capacity

Select the scanned storage to add it to Vinchin Backup Server.

#### • NFS

To add an NFS storage, simply type in the path of the shared folder in the **Shared Folder** field.

Shared Folder *	192.168.84.110:/mnt/disk				
	NFS shared folder, e.g. 192.168.1.10:/path/directory config the mount params				
Name	NFS1				
	Type a name for the storage.				

If you had difficulty to add an NFS share to Vinchin backup server, please make sure Vinchin backup server has write permission to the NFS share.

And by default, Vinchin backup server will mount the NFS share using NFS protocol version 3.0, if your NFS server runs other protocol version, please click on "config the mount params" and in the Mount Params field fill in another version like "vers=2.0".

While adding an NFS share, Vinchin Backup Server will not delete the existing data on the NFS storage.

#### CIFS

To add a CIFS storage, simply type in the path of the shared folder in the Share Folder field.

Shared Folder *	//192.168.84.200/cifs-share
	CIFS shared folder, e.g. //192.168.1.10/path/directory config the mount params
Username	administrator 🗸
	Username for accessing CIFS
Password	······ ·
	Password for accessing CIFS
Name	CIFS-windows
	Type a name for the storage.

In the **Username** and **Password** fields, please enter the username and password of the user on the CIFS storage server, who shared this storage.

By default, Vinchin backup server will mount the CIFS share using CIFS protocol version 3.0, if your CIFS server runs other protocol version, please click on "config the mount params" and in the Mount Params field fill in another version like "vers=2.0".

Vinchin Backup Server will not delete the existing data on the CIFS storage.

#### • Off-site Storage

An off-site storage is another Vinchin Backup Server in another location, it is used as Backup Copy storage only. By using off-site storage, you can save remote backup copy to secure the backup data from any possible site disasters. Before adding an off-site storage, please make sure another Vinchin Backup Server had been deployed in your remote location, and Backup Copy Storage had been added to it.

To add the off-site storage, please select **Off-site Storage** in the **Storage Type** field.

Storage Settings		
Storage Type *	Off-site Storage	~
	Select one of the Storage types.	
IP/Domain *	192.168.84.101	~
	Offsite Vinchin backup server IP/Domain	
Username	admin	~
	Offsite Vinchin backup server administrator username	
Password		~
	Offsite Vinchin backup server administrator password	
Name	Off-site Storage1	
	Type a name for the storage.	

In the IP/Domain field, please enter the IP address of the remote site Vinchin Backup Server.

In the Username and Password fields, please enter the administrator username and password.

Storage Objective	Backup Sackup Copy Archive
Storage Alert	On
Threshold by	Percentage ~
	Set up an alert for the storage so that when the storage free space is less than the preset value, system will alert.
Threshold	20 ^ ~ %

#### Note

If you are connecting the remote off-site storage over Internet, please open TCP port 30050 and 30051 on the remote site router or firewall.

#### • Cloud Object Storage

Cloud storage is used for archiving the backup data only. Vinchin Backup Server v6.5 now supports the following Cloud Object storages:

- Amazon AWS S3 cloud storage
- MS Azure Blob storage
- Alibaba cloud storage
- Huawei cloud storage
- Tencent cloud storage
- Wasabi cloud storage
- MinIO object storage
- Ceph S3 object storage

To add a cloud storage (AWS S3 for example), please select **Cloud Object Storage** in the **Storage Type** field.

Storage Settings			
Storage Type *	Cloud Object Storage	~	
	Select a type for the Storage.		
Vendor	AWS S3	~	
	Supported cloud object storage vendors.		
Region	China (Ningxia)	~	
	Choose a location of the storage data center, or yo enter a region	u can manually	
Service Endpoint	SSL Ce	ertificate	
	Service endpoint URL		
Access Key	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
	Access Key		
Secret Key	••••••	~	
	Secret Key		
Bucket	vinchin 🗸	Scan Bucket	
	Specify the bucket name which will be used		
Folder	✓ archive		
	Type a new folder name to be created or you can	elect from a list	
Name	Cloud Object Storage1		
	Type a name for the storage.		
	Cancel OK		

In the Vendor field, please select AWS S3.

In the Region dropdown list, please select the region which you want to connect to.

The **Service Endpoint** field is optional, if you need to specify the service endpoint URL, and if it's SSL enabled, please enable **SSL Certificate** option, and input the URL without "https://".

In the Access Key ID, Secret Access Key and Bucket Name fields, please enter the credentials provided by Amazon AWS S3.

After you had entered the correct credentials, please click on **Scan Bucket** button. Vinchin Backup Server will try to scan the specified bucket of your account.

After scanning, if there are existing folders in the bucket, you are able to select from the **Folder** dropdown list. The selected folder will be used to save the backup archive data. If you want to create a new folder for backup archive data, you can manually type a new folder name here, once you confirm to add the cloud storage, the new folder will be created in the specified bucket.

### Storage Usage

For the storage types: disk partition, local disk, local directory, logical volume, Fibre Channel(FC), iSCSI, NFS share and CIFS share. The usage of these storage types can be configured as Backup storage, Backup Copy storage or Archive storage, but one storage device can be only configured with one objective.

Storage Usage Backup Copy Archive

For the Off-site Storage, it is another remote/off-site Vinchin Backup Server, and it can be only used as Backup Copy (off-site) storage.



When you add the off-site storage, Backup Copy will be selected by default, and you cannot change the storage usage.

For the Cloud Storage (Amazon S3 or Alibaba Cloud), when you add it you'll see the Storage Objective is defaulted to Archive as below.

St	orage Usage	Backup	Сору	Archive

# **Usage Alert**

For the storage types: disk partition, local disk, local directory, logical volume, Fibre Channel (FC), iSCSI, NFS share, CIFS share and Off-site Storage. You can choose either to enable the storage usage alert or not.

Storage Alert	On
Threshold by	Percentage 🗸
	You will receive system alerts when storage free space is below the given threshold.
Space Left	20 ^ ~ %

The storage usage alert threshold can be configured per the percentage of free space or the actual value of free space. When the storage usage reaches the specified threshold, Vinchin Backup Server will alert in the notification center.

As for the cloud storages, you can configure the storage quota to limit the storage capacity usage, see the figure below.

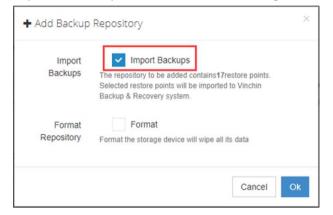
Storage Usage	Backup	þ	Сор	y V Archive
Quota	10	^	~	тв 🕄

You only have to specify the quota of data size allowed to be uploaded to the cloud storage, then Vinchin Backup Server will alert you when you are running out of the quota.

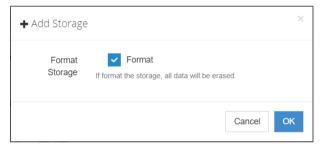
# Data Importing and Storage Formatting

For the storages to be added, if once they had been used by Vinchin Backup Server, the backup/copy/archive data should still remain on them. When you try to add them again, the data will be automatically recognized by Vinchin Backup Server.

For the block storages disk partition, local disk, logical volume, Fibre Channel(FC), iSCSI, you have options to import the backup data or to format the storage. See the figure below.



It is recommended to import the backup data and then add it to Vinchin Backup Server. Otherwise, if you choose to format, Vinchin Backup Server will erase all data on the block storage then add it as a fresh new storage device. If the block storage had not been used by Vinchin Backup Server before, but it may contain other data, please make sure you had backed up all the data before formatting.



For the file storages and object storages, if there's existing backup data, you'll have to import the data to add it to Vinchin Backup Server.

♣ Add Storage		×
Import Archive Data	Import Backups The storage to be added contains1restore points, once select, the restore point will be imported to system	
	Cancel	K

The imported backup data can be found on the **Resources** > **Storage** page by clicking on the **Manage Imported Backups** button.

& Storage List												
+ Add 🕼 Edit 🔋 Delete Stanage Imported Backups								Se	earch I	by storage name	Search Q /	dvanced search
		No.	Storage N	lame 🔶	Туре 🕴	Mount Node	Node Status 🕴	Capacity		Free Space 🚽	Storage Status	Purpose 🕴
+		1	Cloud Store	age	Cloud Storage	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	Normal	10TB		10TB	Normal	Archive
+		2	Cloud Store	age1	Cloud Storage	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	Normal	2TB		2TB	Normal	Archive

The imported backups will be organized by the backup job name.

i≣ Im	Imported Backups List									
€ Assign Belete										
		No.	Job Name 💠	Module	Create Time	Restore Points	Total Size			
+		1	File backup Ubuntu19	File Backup	2020-10-10 16:17:55	3	19MB			
+		2	File backup Windows10	File Backup	2020-10-10 15:32:54	3	1.85GB			
+		3	backup job test	VMware vSphere	2020-09-30 16:14:38	84	10.66GB			

By selecting the corresponding backup job, and click on **Assign** button, you are able to assign the backup data to the selected user from the popup dialog.

🖻 Assign to User		×
Number of Jobs Assign •	1 admin operator admin	~
		Cancel OK

Once the backup data had been assigned to a user, the user will be able to see the backup data and create restore jobs with those data.

# Informational

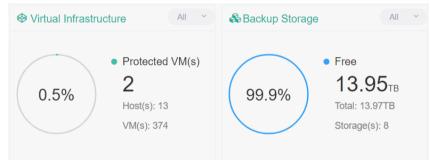
# Dashboard

Each time when you log in to Vinchin Backup Server you'll first see the Dashboard screen, here you can have an overview of the backup server status.

Here are the server time, total uptime and license information.



Here are the information of your virtual infrastructure(s) and backup storages.



In the **Virtual Infrastructure** column, the total number of hosts, VMs and protected VMs will be displayed. If you had added multiple virtual infrastructures, click on the dropdown list on the top right, you can check an individual infrastructure information.

In the **Backup Storage** column, the total storage capacity added to Vinchin Backup Server will be displayed. Click on the dropdown list on the top right, you can check an individual storage device information.

The system resources of the master node and slave node(s) can be monitored as shown in the figure below.

🛦 Backup Node	Master Node(192.168.84.100) ~	•••
CPU Usage Memory Usage		
100%	100%	
80%	80%	
60%	60%	
40%	40%	
20%	20%	
0%	0%	
19:09:10 19:10:08 19:11:07 19:12:03	19:09:10 19:10:08 19:11:07 19:12:03	
Network Flow	All	~
200KB/s	Δ	
150KB/s		
100KB/s		
50KB/s		
OKB/s		<u> </u>
19:09:10 19:09:35 19:09:59 19:10:24 19:10:49	19:11:13 19:11:38 19:12:00 19:12:25 19:	12:47

Select a node from the top right dropdown list you are able to monitor the CPU and memory usage, and also the network flow. In the **Network Flow** chart, it shown the network flow of all NICs of the selected node, to view the network flow of an individual NIC, please select that NIC from the Network Flow dropdown list.

In the **Current Jobs** section, the currently running jobs and the jobs which will be executed most recently will be listed here.



From the job list, by clicking on one of the jobs you are able to view the job details. Or if you want to check more jobs' information please go to the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, and you can find those jobs in the **Current Jobs** list.

In the History Jobs section, a list of recently executed jobs will be displayed here.

D History Jobs	10 records \vee 🔹 • •
[Backup]Citrix XenServer Backup3	success
1 VM(s)   10GB   Duration 00:01:05   Finish Time 07:49:21, 09-29-2020	1 hour(s) ago
[ Restore]Citrix XenServer Restore1	success
1 VM(s)   10GB   Duration 00:00:50   Finish Time 07:38:25, 09-29-2020	2 hour(s) ago
[Backup]Citrix XenServer Backup2	Suspended
1 VM(s)   10GB   Duration 00:00:17   Finish Time 07:37:20, 09-29-2020	2 hour(s) ago
[Backup]File backup job1	success
1 File(s)   17KB   Duration 00:00:13   Finish Time 06:59:43, 09-29-2020	2 hour(s) ago

To check more logs of the history jobs, please go to **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, and you can find more history jobs in the **History Jobs** list.

# **Monitor Center**

### Jobs

On the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, all jobs created on Vinchin Backup Server are able to be viewed and managed here. The jobs which are in running state, pending state, stopped state and failed stated will all be listed in the **Current Job** list. And the jobs which had been executed will all go to the **History Job** list.

#### Current Job

After creating a new job (backup/restore/archive), you can view and manage the newly created job in the **Current Job** list. All the basic information and status of the job will be shown in the current job list. You can start, stop, edit or delete the job accordingly.

								Sear	ch by job name	Search	<b>Q</b> Advanced search
	Job Name 🔶	Module	Job Type	Create Time	•	Status 🔶		Speed 🔶	Progress 🕴	Creator	Operation
F	VMware vSphere Backup2	VMware vSphere	Backup	2021-12-30 17:38:22		Pending	-	-	-	admin	실 Options ~
Ŧ	Sangfor HCI Instant Restore1	Sangfor HCI	Instant Restore	2021-12-30 16:53:40		Stopped	-	-	-	admin	⊉ Options ∨
Ŧ	Red Hat Virtualization(RHV)/oVirt Instant	Red Hat Virtualization(RHV)/oVirt	Instant Restore	2021-12-30 16:37:52		Running	-	-		admin	⊉ Options ∽

Click on the **Options** button of a job, you'll have the following options.

Schedule On: to turn the schedule on of a Stopped job, after turning on, the job status should become Pending.

Start Full: manually perform a full backup of the VMs included in this backup job.

Start Incr.: manually perform an incremental backup of the VMs included in this backup job.

**Start Diff.**: manually perform a differential backup of the VMs included in the backup job.

**Stop**: to turn the schedule off of a pending job or to stop a running job.

Edit: to modify the configurations of a job in Stopped state.

Delete: to delete a job and all the schedules, but the backup data will remain.

#### Note

#### To edit a job, the job needs to be stopped first.

From the job list, by clicking on the  $\pm$  button, you can check more information of a job.

Ξ	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Citrix XenServer	Backup	2020-09-29 07:48:07	Pending			admin	실 Options ~		
Time Schedule: Incremental Backup: Every Month Day1, Day15, 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat											
Ret	ention Policy: 30 restore point(s)										

Basic info such as the backup time schedule and retention policy will be given. If you want to check even more information, please click on the job name, then you'll be directed to the **Job Details** page.

				_
Job Flow	<li>Summary</li>	🗞 Storage	🛗 Strategy	B Advanced
1KB/s -	Job Name :		Citrix XenSer	ver Backup3
BKB/s	Job Type :		Backup[Citrix	XenServer]
6KB/s	Job Status :		Pending	
4KB/s -	Total Size :			
2KB/s -	Processed: Start Time:			
DKB/s	- Duration :			
b Progress	Manage:		2 Operation	
Run Log	-			_
Run Log     VM List     Distory Job       Job success				2020-09-29 07:49.2:
Job success				
Job success				2020-09-29 07:49:21 2020-09-29 07:49:21 2020-09-29 07:48:31
Job success Check and apply retention policy for vm 'CentOS_7_test'	-			2020-09-29 07:49:21
Job success  Check and apply retention policy for vm 'CentOS_7_test'  Transferring vm CentOS_7_test's disk 'CentOS 7 0' data				2020-09-29 07:49:21 2020-09-29 07:48:31
<ul> <li>Job success</li> <li>Check and apply retention policy for vm 'CentOS_7_test'</li> <li>Transferring vm CentOS_7_test's disk 'CentOS 7 0' data</li> <li>transferring VM'CentOS_7_test'backup data</li> <li>vm 'CentOS_7_test' valid size is '3.88 GB'</li> </ul>				2020-09-29 07:49:21 2020-09-29 07:48:31 2020-09-29 07:48:31
<ul> <li>Job success</li> <li>Check and apply retention policy for vm 'CentOS_7_test'</li> <li>Transferring vm CentOS_7_test's disk 'CentOS 7 0' data</li> <li>transferring VM'CentOS_7_test'backup data</li> <li>vm 'CentOS_7_test' valid size is '3.88 GB'</li> </ul>				2020-09-29 07:49:2 2020-09-29 07:48:3 2020-09-29 07:48:3 2020-09-29 07:48:3

#### Job details explanations:

**Job Flow**: the real-time data transmission flow will be displayed to indicate the transmission speed of a currently running job.

Job Progress: a real-time progress bar to show the progress of a running job.

Summary: basic description of the job.

Storage: the storage destination of the data flow.

**Strategy**: the type and schedule of the job.

Advanced: the advanced options for the job.

**Run Log**: if the job is currently running, it will be the real-time log output; if the job is pending or stopped, it will provide the logs of the last time of running.

VM List: if the job is running, all VMs included in this job will be listed here.

**History Job**: the running history of the job.

#### • History Job

All history jobs can be found on the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, under the **History Job** tab.

â D	elete	*	Download Logs							Search by job na	me	Search Q Ad	vanced search
		No.	Job Name	Module 🔅	Job Type 🔅	Creator	Total Size 🔅	Data Size	Transfer Size	Written Size 🔅	Start Time	End Time	Status
+		1	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Citrix XenServer	Full Backup	admin	10GB	3.88GB	3.88GB	810.85MB	2020-09-29 07:48:16	2020-09-29 07:49:21	success
+		2	Citrix XenServer Restore1	Citrix XenServer	Restore	admin	10GB	3.88GB	3.88GB	3.88GB	2020-09-29 07:37:35	2020-09-29 07:38:25	success
+		3	Citrix XenServer Backup2	Citrix XenServer	Full Backup	admin	10GB	0B	0B	0B	2020-09-29 07:37:03	2020-09-29 07:37:20	Suspended

Click on the  $\pm$  button you can expand a history job to view the detailed information.

Ξ		1	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Citrix XenServer	Full Backup	admin	10GB	3.88GB	3.88GB	810.85MB	2020-09-29 07:48:16	2020-09-29 07:49:21	success
VI	I Nam	е	Job Type	Start Time	End Time	Average Spee	d Total Size	Data Size	e Transferr	red Size Written S	ize Status	Descrip	tion
Ce	ntOS_	7_test	Full Backup		2020-09-29 07:49:21	79.46MB/s	10GB	3.88GB	3.88GB	810.85ME	Finish		

To delete the history jobs, please select the job logs and click on the **Delete** button.

And for the failed jobs, you can select that job and click on **Download Logs** button to download the detailed logs of that job for troubleshooting.

# Alerts

#### • Job Alert

Job alerts can be found on the Monitor Center > Alerts page, under the Job Alert tab.

y Jo	b Alert	l System Alert									
💼 De	elete	✓ Mark as Processed					All 🗸	Search by job name	Search	QA	dvanced sear
	No.	Job Name	Job Type 🔶	Alert Type 🔶	Alert Time	•	Description		Mark		Alert Deta
	1	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Backup	Notice	2020-09-29 07:49:21		Job success		Proc	essed	Details
	2	Citrix XenServer Restore1	Restore	Notice	2020-09-29 07:38:25		Job success		Pend	ling	Details

By using the dropdown list above the alert list, you can filter the alert messages by alert types, including notices, warnings and errors.

Click on **Details** button of an alert, you can view the detailed description of the alert message, and at the same time the alert message will be marked as **Processed**. The alert message mark will be viewed and processed by all users who have permissions to do this.

If it is an error alert, you can check the errors from Log Info tab as below.

£₁ Jo	ob Alert	i 🕼 System Alert	& Alert Details			
			Basic Info     O VM Information     C Log Info	✓ Search by job name	Search Q A	
	No.	Job Name			Mark 🍦	Alert Details
	41	File backup job1	2020/09/21 16:53:20 [DEBUG]: Task get vm prepare info and check if		Processed	
	42	Citrix XenServer Insta Restore1	vms support backups 2020/09/21 16:53:28 [DEBUG]: Task take snapshot for backup vm	ed		
	43	Citrix XenServer Restore1	2020/09/21 16:53:30 [DEBUG]: Task quiesce snapshot flag is not set,			
	44	VMware vSphere Backup1	try to create non quiesce snapshot 2020/09/21 16:53:37 [DEBUG]: Task ******* DEE is disabled, disk			
	45	Citrix XenServer Backup1	pathname:[dell-FC-50TB] centos-84.110/centos-84.110.vmdk. 2020/09/21 16:53:37 [DEBUG]: Task ******** DEE is disabled, disk			
	46	Citrix XenServer Backup1	pathname:[dell-FC-50TB] centos-84.110/centos-84.110_1.vmdk.		Processed	
	47	VMware vSphere Backup1	2020/09/21 16:53:41 [DEBUG]: Task vm name: centos-84.110 start backup mode: 1 cur backup mode: 1 degrade: 0 degrade error: 0 valid data backup: 1.	or	Processed	
	48	win10-filebk-test01	2020/09/21 16:53:51 [ERROR: 3805#Vmware server refused		Processed	
	49	win10-filebk-test01	connection error (== VIX_E_HOST_NETWORK_CONN_REFUSED)): open disk error, disk pathname:6000c29e-0c4a-8fd3-7595-		Processed	
	50	filebk-test02	3dc9a62d140b/vmware/vmware_disk_driver_rpc_client.cpp: 144,		Processed	
			Download Logs Mark as Pending Close	Page < 5 > of 6  View 1	) 🗸 records	Total 51 record(s)

The errors you got here can be used for troubleshooting the failure of the job, by clicking on the **Download Logs** button you can download the error logs as a plain text file. And if you don't want to mark the error alert message as processed, you can click on **Mark as Pending** button to mark this alert to pending state.

#### • System Alert

System alerts can be found on the **Monitor Center** > **Alerts** page, under the **System Alert** tab.

ር <sub>ስ</sub> Jo	b Alert	🅼 System Aler	t						
💼 De	elete 🗸	Mark as Process	ed			All	~	•	Q Advanced search
	No.	Alert Type 🔅	Alert Time	•	Description	M	lark		Alert Details
	1	Notice	2020-09-28 15:39:39		Storage back onlinebackupserver.vinchin	P	Processed		Details
	2	Warning	2020-09-18 18:43:55		Backup node 'backupserver.vinchin[192.168.84.100]'exception.[#184]Service in backup node is restarted, stopped or interrupted	D F	Processed		Details

Similar as the job alerts, you can have the same options to filter these alert messages and you can mark the messages as processed or pending state.

System alert messages are mainly used to notify users about the backup server, backup node(s) and storages status.

#### Logs

#### Job Logs

On the **Monitor Center** > **Logs** page, under the **Job Logs** tab, the operations related with job stop, job schedule on, job creation, job deletion and job modification can be all found here.

D	elete							S	earch by job name Search Q Advanced sear
	No.	Job Name	Module 🝦	Job Type 👙	User 🗄	Time	<b>,</b> S	tatus 🕴	Description
	1	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Citrix XenServer	Backup	admin	2020-09-29 13:49:02		Normal	Job 'Citrix XenServer Backup3' Backup as scheduled has been enabled
	2	VMware vSphere Backup1	VMware vSphere	Backup	admin	2020-09-29 09:32:52		Normal	Job 'VMware vSphere Backup1'has been created
	3	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Citrix XenServer	Backup	admin	2020-09-29 07:48:07		Normal	Job 'Citrix XenServer Backup3'has been created
	4	Citrix XenServer Restore1	Citrix XenServer	Restore	admin	2020-09-29 07:37:29		Normal	Job 'Citrix XenServer Restore1'has been created
	5	File backup job1	File Backup	Backup	admin	2020-09-29 06:59:24		Normal	Job 'File backup job1'has been created
	6	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Citrix XenServer	Backup	admin	2020-09-29 06:46:45		Normal	Job 'Citrix XenServer Backup3' has been deleted
	7	Citrix XenServer Backup3	Citrix XenServer	Backup	admin	2020-09-29 06:46:06		Normal	Job 'Citrix XenServer Backup3'has been created
	8	Copy Job1	Backup Copy	Backup Copy	admin	2020-09-29 06:28:13		Normal	Job 'Copy Job1' has been deleted
	9	Copy Job1	Backup Copy	Backup Copy	admin	2020-09-29 06:28:02		Normal	Job 'Copy Job1'has been stopped
1	10	Copy Job1	Backup Copy	Backup Copy	admin	2020-09-28 18:19:21		Normal	Job 'Copy Job1'has been created

Each row in the job log list corresponds to an operation to a specific job. The name of the user who performed the operation and the time of when the operation had been performed will be given.

#### System Logs

On the Monitor Center > Logs page, under the System Logs tab, all user activities can be found here.

D	elete	🛓 Download	d System Logs			Search by user name Search Q Advanced search
	No.	User	Time	🗸 S	tatus	Description
	1	admin	2020-09-29 16:29:01	Ν	lormal	System login success, ip: '192.168.128.45'
	2	luwen	2020-09-29 16:00:19	Ν	lormal	System login success, ip: '192.168.128.16'
	3	luwen	2020-09-29 16:00:14	E	rror	System login failed,[#50100]User name or password incorrect
	4	admin	2020-09-29 15:14:55	N	lormal	System login success, ip: '192.168.128.17'
	5	admin	2020-09-29 13:24:03	N	lormal	System login success, ip: '192.168.128.45'
	6	admin	2020-09-29 11:40:42	N	lormal	System login success, ip: '192.168.128.29'
	7	admin	2020-09-29 11:07:19	N	lormal	System login success, ip: '192.168.128.17'
	8	luwen	2020-09-29 10:57:30	N	lormal	System login success, ip: '192.168.128.16'
	9	luwen	2020-09-29 10:57:25		rror	System login failed,[#50100]User name or password incorrect
	10	luwen	2020-09-29 10:57:22	E	rror	System login failed,[#50100]User name or password incorrect

The logs can be filtered by typing specific user name in the search box. And you may download the system logs by clicking on the **Download System Logs** button.

🛓 Do	ownload		B	ackup Node backupse	erver.vi 🗸
	File name	•	Size	Update Time	
	system_log_2020-09-29		3.99MB	2020-09-29 16:37:32	
	system_log_2020-09-28		4.95MB	2020-09-28 23:59:54	
	system_log_2020-09-27		3.85MB	2020-09-27 23:59:38	
	system_log_2020-09-26		3.55MB	2020-09-26 23:59:47	
	system_log_2020-09-25		3.52MB	2020-09-25 23:59:59	
	system_log_2020-09-24		3.82MB	2020-09-24 23:59:19	
	system_log_2020-09-23		4.71MB	2020-09-23 23:59:52	
	system_log_2020-09-22		3.6MB	2020-09-22 23:59:58	
	system_log_2020-09-21		3.2MB	2020-09-21 23:59:20	
	system_log_2020-09-20		2.37MB	2020-09-20 23:59:05	
		Page < 1	> of 2   View	10 v records Total	14 record(s

In the **Download System Logs** dialog, the logs are arranged by date. You can select the desired logs and click on the **Download** button to download the logs.

And on the top right of the dialog, you can choose a specific backup node to download the logs related to the selected backup node.

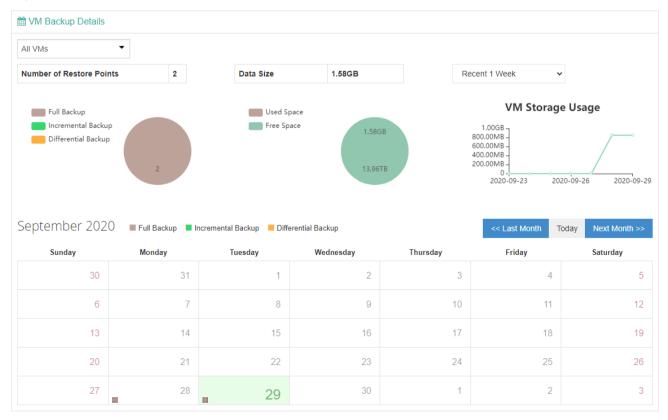
# Reports

#### • VM Reports

You can check the VM Backup Statistics from the **Monitor Center** > **Reports** page, under the **VM Reports** tab.

	Platform	VM(s)	Protected VM(s)	No.	VM Name		Platform	Restore Points	Backup Size
1	VMware vSphere	355	1	1	CentOS_7_minnie		Citrix XenServer	1	811.21MB
2	Citrix XenServer	12	3	2	CentOS_7_test		Citrix XenServer	1	810.85MB
3	SANGFOR HCI	4	0			Page <	1 > of 1   View	10 v records	Total 2 record(
4	XCP-ng	5	0						
	/Mware vSphere								
	Citrix XenServer								
	SANGFOR HCI	124	5						
_	(CP-ng								
_									
_									

In the VM Backup Statistics section, you can have the statistics reports of the virtual platforms, protected VMs and the restore points of the protected VMs. And you can export the reports to a PDF file by clicking on the **Export Reports** button.



Vinchin Backup & Recovery v6.7 | Admin User Guide

In the VM Backup Details section, you can have the following statistics reports:

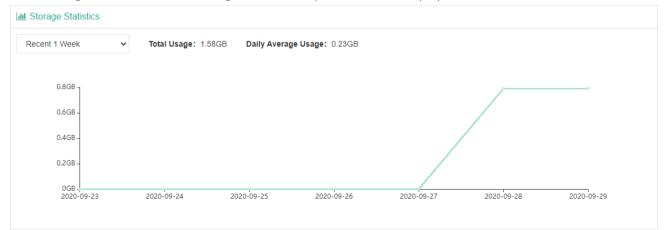
- > Number of restore points and a pie chart of restore points by different backup technologies.
- The total size of all backup data.
- > The line chart of storage usage per 1 week, 2 week or a month.
- The backup schedules in calendar view.

#### • Storage Reports

You can check the storage statistics reports from the **Monitor Center** > **Reports** page, under the **Storage Reports** tab.

Stor	age Overview						
No.	Node Name	IP	Storage(s)	Capacity	Free Space	Usage	Storage Usage
	backupserver.vinchin	192.168.84.100	8	13.97TB	13.96TB	0.1%	14.62GB
2	backupnode.vinchin	192.168.84.101	0			0%	
		Page <	1 > of 1	View 10		Il 2 record(s)	13.96TB
	_					i z record(s)	13.96TB Used Space Free Space
acku (1	pnode.vinchin 92.168.84.101)			10		ii 2 record(s)	
acku (1	pnode.vinchin 92.168.84.101)					ii 2 record(s)	Used Space Free Space

In the Storage Overview section, storages on all backup nodes will be displayed here.



In the **Storage Statistics** section, you can have the reports of total storage usage and daily average usage. And a line chart of storage usages per 1 week, 2 weeks, 1 month, 2 months or 3 months.

# VM Backup

# Backup

# **Virtual Machines**

On the VM Backup > Virtual Machines page, you can view all the VMs from all virtual platforms which you've added into Vinchin backup server.

+ Ad	d to e	xisting job 🌈 Create new jo	b					Search by VM name	Search	Q Advanced searc
	No.	VM Name	VM IP	Virtual Infrastructure	Status	Latest Backup	Backup Job	Restore Points	Backup Size	Operation
	1	FC_1_Thin		192.168.76.77	Unprotected					실 Options ~
	2	FC_1_preallocated_2disks		192.168.76.77	Unprotected					신 Options ~
	3	FC_1_preallocated		192.168.76.77	Unprotected					신 Options ~
	4	centosbk		192.168.124.70	Unprotected					한 Options ~
	5	centos8		192.168.64.18:8080	Unprotected					
	6	centos7_20211118125359		192.168.76.77	Unprotected		-			Options ~
	7	centos7		192.168.124.40	Unprotected		-	-		Options      ✓
	8	centos7		192.168.64.18:8080	Unprotected					🖞 Options ~
	9	BIOS_2008_R2_123456		192.168.76.77	Unprotected			-		
	10	BIOS_2008_R2_012		192.168.76.77	Unprotected			-		② Options ∨

You can select multiple unprotected VMs to add to an existing backup job or create a new backup job. By clicking **Options**, you can choose to add a specific VM to an existing backup job, or choose to create a new backup job for this specific VM.

Or you can select the target VM(s) and click on the **Add to existing job** button to add the VM(s) to existing backup jobs, or you can click on **Create new job** to create a new backup job to protect the selected VM(s).

To add the selected VM(s) to existing backup job, please select the existing backup job as below.

+ Add VM to b	ackup job	×
Add to Job *	Citrix XenServer Backup2	~
	Add the VM to current backup job	
		Cancel OK

When a VM has been added to a backup job, the status will be change to Protected, and the number of restore points and the backup data size will be organized on the Virtual Machines page.

No.	VM Name 🔻	VM IP $\Leftrightarrow$	Virtual Infrastructure	Status	Latest Backup	Backup Job	Restore Points	Backup Size	Operation
1	✓	-	192.168.83.201:7443	<ul> <li>Protected</li> </ul>		Huawei FusionCompute			
	201_centos_6_5_dsesktop_150_vm8					Kvm Backup1			

# Create Backup Job

To create a backup job, you can do it from the **Virtual Machines** page by selecting target VM(s) and then click on **Create new backup job**, or you can do it on **VM Backup** > **Backup** page. Please follow the below steps to create VM backup jobs.

#### Step 1: Backup Source

Select the virtual machines you want to back up from the virtualization infrastructure tree, expand the infrastructure until you see the virtual machines. Select the virtual machines you need to back up, the selected virtual machine(s) will be added to the **Selected VM(s)** column.

A New Backup Job			
1 Backup Source	2 Backup Destination	3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
Select VM(s) *	B Hosts & Clusters	Selected V	M(s)
	☐ 🗗 VMware vSphere ☐ 🗗 Vsphere7(192.168.124.10) Refresh Expand all Collapse All	+ 🗗 122.10 - zentao	8
	Datacenter 	+ 🗗 122.100 - web.php7	×
	A_teat2 A_test5 A_vinchin6.5.1		
	- C ff CentOS7-19 - C ff centos8seafile		
	C 🗗 centosbk1 C 🛱 centosbk2		
	🗖 🔂 centosbk3		

#### Note

1. If the VM is already in an existing backup job, it will be highlighted in Green and un-selectable.

2. You can only add VMs to a backup job from the same virtualization platform, if you have multiple virtualization platforms, please create new jobs for the VMs in the other virtualization platforms.

Click on the selected VM, all the virtual disks attached to this VM will show up, you can choose to exclude specific disk(s) from this backup job by unticking the disk(s).

Selected VM(	s)
— 💽 Centos7	×
Centos7_Disk1	<b>~</b>
Centos7_Disk2	

#### Note

Exclude VM disk from backup job does not support with OpenStack platform.

If your virtual infrastructure has been updated recently, click on **Refresh** button to update and sync the VM list to Vinchin backup server.



When done adding the target VM(s), please click on Next button to continue.

#### Step 2: Backup Destination

A backup destination (backup storage) should be associated with this backup job.

Arr New Backup Job		
1 v Backup Source	2 Backup Destination 3 Backup S	Strategies 4 Review & Confirm
Target Node	localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17)	~
Target Storage	ISCSI1(ISCSI, Capacity :299.85GB, Free Space:34.54GB) Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :99.95GB, Free Space:34.54GB) ISCSI1(ISCSI, Capacity :299.85GB, Free Space:34.54GB) I : Setect a socupriode form rims backup por 2. Select a storage on the node to save the backup data.	~

In the **Target Node** dropdown list, you can select a backup node on which you want the backup data to be processed and stored.

In the **Target Storage** dropdown list, the storages which belong to the selected backup node can be selected. When done selecting the backup storage, please click on **Next** button to continue.

### Step 3: Backup Strategy

### General Strategy

Under the General Strategy tab, you can setup the backup Time Schedule, Speed Controller, Data Storage Policy, Retention Policy and Advanced Strategy.

1 → Backup Source	2 v Backup Destination 3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confi
🖉 General Strategy 🗧	ransmission Strategy 🛛 🚳 Individual Strategy	
Select Strategy	Customize Strategy	
	O Schedule	-
	Time Windows       0       1       2       3       4       5       6       7       8       9       10       11       12       13       14       15       16       17       18       19       20       21       22       23         idle       Normal       Crowded       Busy       Image: Crowded       Busy       Image: Crowded       I	
		+
	Data Storage Policy Data Deduplication: OFF, Data Compression: ON,Data Encryption: OFF	+
	Retention Policy 30 Restore Point(s), GFS Retention:OFF	+
	B8 Advanced Strategy Multithread: 3, Snapshot Mode: Serial, BitDetector: OFF, Exclude Swap Files: OFF, Exclude Unpartitioned Sy	Dares: OFF

In the **Select Strategy** dropdown list, you can select a preconfigured strategy template, if you had created strategy templates, otherwise choose **Customize Strategy**. For how to create strategy templates, please refer to <u>Strategy</u>. <u>Templates</u>.

To determine the backup window of this job, the **Time Windows** indicator can be a reference for you to determine in which time window the job should be scheduled.

In the Time Schedule field, you can configure the time schedule of the backup job, you can configure the job as a **Backup as Scheduled** job or a **Once-off Backup** job.

For a once-off backup job, the job will only run for once, and only full backup will be performed. You only have to appoint a time of when to start the backup job in the Time Schedule field.

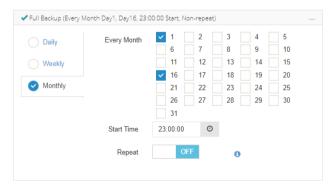
1 Time Schedule Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:	00:00	) Stai	t, N	on-re	epea	it). Ir	ncrem
Mode Once-off Backup							~
Start Time *					1	×	<b>*</b>
		Se	epter	mbei	202	20	>
(?) Speed Controller		Мо					
	30	31	1	2	3	4	5
🖹 Storage Strategy Deduplication: OFF, Compr	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
Retention Policy 1 restore point(s)	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
	27	28	29	30	1	2	3
88 Advanced Strategy Threads: 3, Standard Sna	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

For Scheduled backup job, you can schedule Full Backup with Incremental Backup combination, Full Backup with Differential backup combination or Forever Incremental Backup (enable incremental backup only). Here we take Full Backup with Incremental Backup as an example.

Mode	Backup as scheduled 🗸	
Schedule *	✓ Full Backup ✓ Incremental Backup Differential Backup 6	
	✔ Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat)	-
	✓ Incremental Backup (Every Day 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat)	_

By default, full backups will be scheduled on each Friday night at 11PM. And incremental backups will be scheduled each day at 11PM (when the time point of a full backup is overlapped with an incremental backup, full backup will be taken, and the incremental backup with be taken on the next scheduled time point). This is the most commonly used strategy that we recommended. But if you want to customize the schedules according to your requirements, you can click on the  $\pm$  icon to expand and customize the settings for either full backups or incremental backups.

For example, you can schedule full backups twice a month without repeating.



Then configure several incremental backups each day, by default incremental backup will run only for once each day, to run incremental backups several times a day, you can enable the **Repeat** option.

🕑 Daily	Start Time	0:00:00	Ø		
Weekly	Repeat	ON		0	
Monthly	Repeat Interval	6:00:00	0		

In the above example, full backups will run on day 1 and day 16 of each month, incremental backups will run every 6 hours each day. This is just an example, you should configure the schedules per your requirements based on your actual virtual environments.

After configuring the time schedules of the backups, next you can configure the **Speed Controller**, the speed controller settings are optional, only if the backup jobs will bring network or I/O overload to your production environment, you can configure the speed controller accordingly.

Policy	As Scheduled	▼ (1)			
Schedule	Daily	Start Time	7:30:00	0	
	Weekly	End Time	18:30:00	0	
	Monthly				
av Sneed	50				
ax opeca	50				
lax Speed	50 ^ ~	MB/s 🗸 🚯			

The speed controller policy can be configured as **Permanent** or **As Scheduled**.

Data Storage Policy including Deduplication, Compression and Encryption of the backup data.

🖪 Data Storage Policy Da	ta Deduplication: OFF, Data (	Compression: ON,Data Encryption: ON	_
Data Deduplication	Off	0	
Data Compression	On	0	
Data Encryption	On	0	
Random Password	Off		
Password			
Confirm Password	•••••		

By enabling **Data Deduplication** and **Data Compression**, you can save the bandwidth and storage resources for transmitting and storing the backup data.

By enabling **Data Encryption**, the backup data will be encrypted and then stored into the backup storage. A password needs to be specified to secure the data encryption, when creating a VM restore job, password verification is required to perform VM restore.

**Retention Policy** can be used to define how much/long the backup data to be reserved in the backup storage, you can either define the retention policy with **Number of Restore Points** or **Number of Days** mode. Additionally, you can activate the advanced **GFS Retention** for your VM backups to apply long-term retention policy of some specific full restore points.

Retention Policy 30 Restore P	oint(s), GFS Retention	OFF		
Retention Mode	Number of Restore	Points 🗸	0	
Restore Points	30	^ ¥		
GFS Retention	Off		0	

If you choose the retention policy as number of restore points, Vinchin Backup Server will save the specified number of restore points (for each VM included in the backup job), if you choose number of days, Vinchin Backup Server will save the restore points within the specified number of days (for each VM included in the backup job), the older restore points will be deleted or merged to comply with the retention policy.

For the backup jobs with full backup schedules only, Vinchin Backup server will delete the older backup restore points directly to comply with the retention policy.

For the incremental backup jobs, to comply with the retention policy, Vinchin backup server will merge the first full backup with the following incremental backup restore points to comply with the retention policy. If it's a forever incremental backup job, Vinchin backup server will always merge backup restore points. If there are full backups to be taken regularly, then the first full backup will be merged with the incremental backup restore points between the first and the second full backup, the first full backup restore point will be deleted at the next run of the job.

For differential backup jobs, Vinchin backup server will delete the first differential backup restore point to comply with the retention policy, if all differential backup restore points between the first and the second full backup restore points had been deleted, the first full backup restore point will be deleted at the next run of the job.

For Microsoft Hyper-V, the retention policy is different with other virtual platforms, it is based on full backup restore points. It will lead a deletion of the furthest full backup point together with its corresponding incremental or differential backup points when a new full backup point is generated.

If you wish to apply long-term data retention with GFS, please switch the **GFS Retention** option on and then configure the **Weekly Retention**, **Monthly Retention** and **Yearly Retention** policies accordingly.

GFS Retention Policy	
W Weekly Retention	
Start from Sunday $\checkmark$ , keep the first full backup for 5 $\land$ $\checkmark$	weeks.
Monthly Retention	
Start from First Week $\checkmark$ , keep the first full backup for 5 $\land$ $\checkmark$	months.
Yearly Retention	
Start from January 🗸 , keep the first full backup for 5 <	years.

For **Weekly Retention**, please select a day of the week from which the full restore point will be generated and specify how many weeks you wish the weekly full backup to be reserved.

For example, if Sunday is selected, Vinchin backup server will tag the full restore point of each Sunday with a "W"

tag. If there's no full restore point generated on Sunday, it will start waiting and tagging the first coming full restore point of the week. The tagged full restore point will be kept for the specified number of weeks.

To be able to turn on weekly GFS retention, you should at least configure the full backup schedules to run on weekly basis.

For **Monthly Retention**, please select the first or the last week of the month from which the full restore point is coming from and specify how many months you wish the monthly full backup to be reserved.

For example, if **First Week** is selected, Vinchin backup server will tag the first coming full restore point from the first week of each month with a "**M**" tag. The tagged full restore point will be kept for the specified number of months.

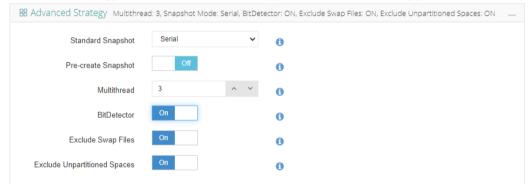
To be able to turn on monthly GFS retention, you should at least configure the full backup schedules to run on weekly basis.

For **Yearly Retention**, please select a month of the year from which the full restore point is coming from and specify how many years you wish the yearly full backup to be reserved.

For example, if **January** is selected, Vinchin backup server will tag the first coming full restore point from each January with a "**Y**" tag. The tagged full restore point will be kept for the specified number of years.

To be able to turn on yearly GFS retention, you should at least configure the full backup schedules to run on monthly basis.

Advanced Strategy contains some advanced options for the VM backup job.



**Standard Snapshot** can be configured if the backup job includes multiple VMs, and it can be configured as **Serial** or **Parallel**. If serial, the snapshots will be taken one by one. If parallel, the snapshot requests will be simultaneously sent to the virtual platform. It's not recommended to set parallel snapshot, as it may cause the production environment overload. Only if the VMs are service correlated which requires all the snapshots to be time consistent.

**Pre-create Snapshot** can be enabled to create the next VM's disk snapshot while the previous VM is being transferred to the backup storage. The feature is not applicable with Microsoft Hyper-V.

By specifying the number of **Multithread**, you can enable multithreaded transmission to improve the processing speed of the backup job. The default value for multithreaded transmission is 3, even if you can set the value from 1 to 8, but usually 3 threads will be enough.

**BitDetector** can be enabled to exclude the swap partitions and the unpartitioned spaces from the backup job.

#### Note

1. If you only select incremental backup or differential backup without selecting full backup, when first time starting this job, system will automatically execute a full backup.

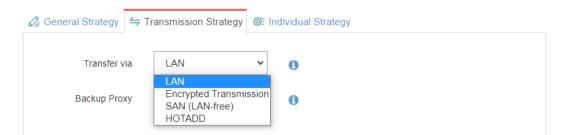
2. Incremental backup can be configured without full backup, after first time running this job in full backup mode, it will turn into a forever incremental backup mode (Forever Incremental Backup is not supported with Microsoft

#### Hyper-V).

It is recommended to do a full backup each week/month and do an incremental backup every day.
 It is recommended to set the backup schedule to run at night or in the other nonproduction hours.
 Multithreaded transmission does not mean backup several VM disks simultaneously, it only adds additional threads to process one VM disk to improve the transmission speed.

#### Transmission Strategy

The transmission strategies for different virtual platforms are different. **VMware vSphere**:



For VMware vSphere, the backup data can be transferred through LAN, LAN (Encrypted Transmission), SAN (LAN-Free) or HOTADD (LAN-Free).

When you choose to transfer via LAN or LAN (Encryption), Proxy can be used, as the backup proxy is installed on ESXi server you can utilize the HotAdd technology of the ESXi server for direct VMDK access.

**SAN (LAN-Free)** can be used to transfer the backup data from the storage area network. LAN-Free path needs to be configured, please refer to <u>LAN-Free</u>.

**HOTADD (LAN-Free)** can be used only if Vinchin Backup Server is installed on the ESXi server as a virtual machine. **Microsoft Hyper-V**:

For Microsoft Hyper-V, the backup data transmission is LAN based, you can choose to either encrypt the backup data or not.

#### Citrix XenServer, XCP-ng and OLVM (4.3):

6	🖄 General Strategy 🗧 Transi	mission Strategy @ Indi	ividual St	rategy
	Transfer via	LAN	~	0
	Encrypted Transmission	SAN (LAN-free)		0
	Transmission Network			0

For Citrix XenServer, XCP-ng and OLVM, the backup data can be transferred through LAN or through the storage area network.

If you choose to do the backups over LAN, by default, the backup data will be transferred via the production network. But if you have a separated network for VM backup, please specify the network address in the

**Transmission Network** field in "network/prefix\_length" format, e.g., 172.16.0.0/16. And you can choose to either encrypt the transmission or not by turning **Encrypted Transmission** on or off.

**SAN (LAN-Free)** can be used to transfer the backup data from the storage area network. LAN-Free path needs to be configured, please refer to <u>LAN-Free</u>.

#### Red Hat Virtualization(RHV)/oVirt and OLVM (4.4.8):

🖉 General Strategy	≒ Transi	mission Strategy	🕸 Individual	Strategy	
_				A	
Iran	sfer via	LAN	~	0	
Encrypted Transr	nission	LAN SAN (LAN-free ImageIO	e)	0	
Transmission N	etwork			0	

For RHV/oVirt, the backup data can be transferred through LAN or through the storage area network, or through ImageIO API.

For LAN and ImageIO, the data will be transferred through production network by default, but if you have a separated network for VM backup, please specify the network address in the **Transmission Network** field in "network/prefix\_length" format, e.g., 172.16.0.0/16. And you can choose to either encrypt the transmission or not by turning **Encrypted Transmission** on or off.

**SAN (LAN-Free)** can be used to transfer the backup data from the storage area network. LAN-Free path needs to be configured, please refer to <u>LAN-Free</u>.

#### Note

1. If you set transmission strategy as LAN, backup plugin needs to be installed on RHVH/oVirt hosts.

2. If you set transmission strategy as ImageIO, RHV/oVirt version must be 4.4.7 or higher.

#### H3C UIS/CAS and Sangfor HCI:

🖉 General Strategy	← Transmission Strategy	Ø EIndividual Strategy	
Encrypted Transm	nission On	•	
Transmission Ne	etwork	0	

For H3C UIS/CAS and Sangfor HCI, the backup data transmission goes through LAN by default, you can choose to either encrypt the backup data or not by turning the **Encrypted Transmission** on or off.

If you have a separated network for VM backup, please specify the network address in the **Transmission Network** field in "network/prefix\_length" format, e.g., 172.16.0.0/16.

#### **OpenStack:**

🖉 General Strategy	⇐ Transmission Strategy	@E Individual Strategy
Transfer via	a SAN (LAN-free) LAN SAN (LAN-free) Backup Proxy	

For OpenStack, the backup data can be transferred through LAN or through the storage area network, or through Backup Proxy.

If LAN, Vinchin backup plugin for OpenStack needs to be installed on both OpenStack Compute nodes and Controller nodes.

If **SAN (LAN-Free)**, OpenStack backend storage must be Ceph and Vinchin backup server/node must have access to the Ceph Public network.

If Backup Proxy, Vinchin backup proxy must be installed in the OpenStack virtual platform.

#### Huawei FusionCompute (KVM):

🖉 General Strategy 🖕 Transm	ission Strategy @E Individual Strategy	
Transfer via	NBD ~ 0	
Backup Server/Node IP	LAN NBD	
	Please select a backup server/node IP which can reach the virtual hosts, if no available IP address is given, you can manually enter an IP address	

For Huawei FusionCompute, backup data can be transferred through LAN or via NBD.

#### ZStack Cloud:

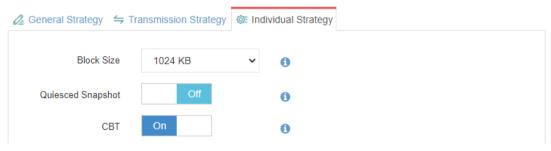
🖉 General Strategy 🗧 Transmiss	ion Strategy @E Individual Strategy
Transfer via	SAN (LAN-free) V
	LAN
	SAN (LAN-free)

For ZStack Cloud, backup data can be transferred through LAN or SAN. SAN (LAN-free) backup is only applicable when the backend storage of ZStack is Ceph, otherwise please select LAN.

#### Individual Strategy

The individual strategies for different virtual platforms are different.

#### VMware vSphere:



RHV/oVirt, OLVM (4.4.8), Citrix XenServer and XCP-ng:

🖉 General Strategy 🗧 T	ransmission Strat	tegy 🞯	Individual S	Strategy
Incremental Mode	SpeedKit	~	0	
	SpeedKit			
	Ordinary			
	CBT			

H3C UIS/CAS, Sangfor HCI, OpenStack and ZStack:

	🖉 General Strategy 🛛 🖨 Transmission St	rategy 🐲 Individual Strategy
	SpeedKit On	0
н	uawei FusionCompute KVM:	
	🔏 General Strategy 🗧 Transmission Strategy	@= Individual Strategy
	Incremental Mode CBT	~ <b>0</b>

ิด

Strategy descriptions:

Consistency Snapshot

**Block Size** can be defined only for VMware vSphere virtual platform. When running the backup jobs, Vinchin Backup Server will perform deduplication and compression to the backup data per the defined block size.

**SpeedKit** is a Vinchin technology to improve the efficiency of incremental backups. It is recommended to be enabled if you have sufficient production storage, as there will always be a snapshot kept in your production storage. If you don't want to keep the snapshots or you have limited production storage, disable SpeedKit will release the production storage. Please be noted that after disabling Speedkit, the next incremental backup will automatically run as a full backup, the following incremental backup will be slower.

When performing incremental backups using **Ordinary** mode, a snapshot is not required to be always kept in your production environment, but it will take relatively longer time for incremental backup job.

**CBT** (Changed Block Tracking) is now supported with VMware vSphere, Citrix XenServer (7.3 and higher), XCP-ng and Huawei FusionCompute, it is a more advanced way to perform incremental backups than using SpeedKit or Ordinary mode.

**Quiesced Snapshot** is configurable with VMware vSphere, when taking snapshot of the VMs to be backed up, if the VMs have VMware Tools installed, VMware Tools will process the VMs into a state suitable for backing up.

**Consistency Snapshot** is configurable with Huawei FusionCompute(KVM), it is used to ensure the VM data consistency when creating VM snapshot.

### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above-mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen.

A New Backup Job	
1 v Backup Source	2 v Backup Destination 3 v Backup Strategy 4 Review & Confirm
Job Name :	backup job test
De dura Course	Default job name could be modified.
Backup Source : Backup Source : Backup Destination	Centos-84.110 /ubuntu-84.112 VMware vSphere VM Backup
Target Node:	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)
Target Storage:	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :1023.5GB, Free Space:1021.88GB)
Backup Strategy	
Mode :	Backup as scheduled
Time Schedule:	Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat) Incremental Backup (Every Day 0:00:00 Start, Repeat Interval 6:00:00, 23:59:59 End)
Storage Strategy :	Deduplication : OFF Compression: ON Block Size : 1024 KB
Transmission Strategy:	Transfer via: LAN Proxy: OFF
Retention Policy :	30 restore point(s)
Advanced Strategy :	Quiesced Snapshot: ON CBT: ON Standard Snapshot : Serial Create snapshot in advance: OFF BitDetector: OFF Threads : 3
Speed Controller:	N/A
	⊕ Back Submit ⊚

A job name can be specified for identification of the VM backup jobs, and by clicking on the Submit button to confirm the settings and create the backup job.

# **Backup Job Operations**

After creating a new backup job, you can find it on the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page, under the **Current Job** tab.

B Current Job 😨	History Job											
r → New Job ~							Se	arch	by job name		Search	Q Advanced search
Job Name		Module	Job Type	Create Time	•	Status	Speed	Pr	rogress 🕴	Creato	or 🔅	Operation
🗄 backup job test		VMware vSphere	Backup	2020-09-30 16:14:38		Pending				admin		
							Page <	1	> of 1   V	liew 1	0	ecords   Total 1 record(

The status of the newly created job will usually be **Pending**, when the time condition matches the schedule, it will automatically run. And the status will change to Running, you can also see the transfer speed and job progress here within the job list. By clicking on the job name, you can check more detailed information on the **Job Detail** page.

For a scheduled backup job, after running one of the schedules, the status will change to Pending again and then wait for the next run.

For a once-off backup job, after running the job for once, it will be removed from the Current Job list. And you can find it from the History Job list.

For more information, please check the instructions on <u>Monitor Center</u> section.

# **VM** Restore

# **Create Restore Job**

To restore a VM or a group of VMs, a restore job needs to be created, go to the VM Backup > Restore page. Please follow the below steps to create VM restore jobs.

#### **Step 1: Select Restore Point**

In the Restore Point dropdown list, select a backup node which stores the desired restore points.

Select a target VM restore point under your virtual infrastructure which you want to restore. You can quickly find the target restore point by searching the job name, VM name or the date of the restore point.

A New VM Restore Job				
1 Restore Point	2 Restore Destination 3	F	Restore Strategy 4 Review & Conf	firm
Restore Point *	All nodes Search by job name/VM name/date	~	Selected restore points	
	Generative By job hamerow nameroale         □ OpenStack         □ ⊕ □ OpenStack Backup2         □ ⊕ □ Citrix XenServer/Citrix Hypervisor         □ ⊕ □ Citrix XenServer/Citrix Hypervisor Backup1(Job has been deleted)         □ ⊕ □ VMware vSphere         □ ⊕ □ Citrix SenServer/Citrix Hypervisor Backup1(Job has been deleted)         □ ⊕ □ Citrix ZenServer/Citrix Hypervisor Backup1(Job has been deleted)         □ ⊕ □ Citrix Censerver/Citrix Hypervisor Backup1(Job has been deleted)         □ ⊕ □ Citrix Censerver/Citrix Hypervisor Backup1(Job has been deleted)         □ ⊕ □ Citrix Censerver/Citrix Hypervisor Backup3(Job has been deleted)	)	2021-12-16 15:03:57 (Full Backup) ▲ centosbk1	

You can restore a group of VMs by selecting one of the restore points under each of the VMs. After selecting the desired restore point under virtual machine which you want to recover, click **Next** to continue.

#### Step 2: Restore Destination

In the Target Host list, select a target host where you want to run the restored VMs.

A New VM Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3 Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Target Host *	☐ 192.168.124.10)           ☐ 192.168.64.71           ☐ @ 192.168.64.72           ☐ @ 192.168.64.73           Expand the virtual infrastructures to select a host where to run the restored VM		
Unified Configurations *	Off 0		
VM Configurations *	Centosbk Expand a VM to configure its restore configurations.		+

After restored, the VMs will run on the selected host.

#### Note

- 1. For OpenStack virtual platform, please select target project instead.
- 2. If the host is offline, you cannot select it as restore destination.
- 3. You can restore a VM to an unauthorized host.

**Unified Configurations**: If you are restoring a group of VMs, enable this function you can set the storage, network, and choose whether to power on the target VMs after restoring.

Unified Configurations *	On	
Restore to *	Auto-select	~
Connect to *	Auto-select	~
Power on target VM after restoring *	Off Please keep the original backed up VM poweroff after enable this function.	

**VM Configurations**: Here you can setup advanced restore options for specific VM(s) by clicking on the VM name, modifying the configurations of one VM will not affect the unified configurations of the other VMs if you had enabled **Unified Configurations** option.

Name & Status: You can set a customized name for the VM to be restored and set its power status after restoring.

VM Configurations *	🖵 centosbk		_
	🚔 General 📳 Virtual Disk	Virtual Network	
	Name & Status	Restored VM Name : *	
	CPU	centosbk_20211116162929	
	RAM	Power on the VM after restoring *	
	Expand a VM to configure its restore configure		

CPU: Here you are allowed to change the number of CPUs or CPU cores for the VM to be restored if necessary.

VM Configurations *	🖵 centosbk			
	🗟 General 💾 Virtu	al Disk	Other Settings	
	Name & Status	CPU Sockets : *	Cores per Socket : *	
	CPU	2 (Original)	✓ 1 (Original)	~
	RAM			
	10 dil			
	Expand a VM to configure its rest	tore configurations.		

RAM: Here you are allowed to change the RAM size of the VM to be restored if necessary.

VM Configurations *	⊊ centosbk
	🗟 General 🔛 Virtual Disk 🌐 Virtual Network 🕞 Other Settings
	Name & Status RAM Size: "(Original 4 GB)
	4 û GB 🗸
	RAM
	Expand a VM to configure its restore configurations.

Virtual Disk: Virtual Disk settings are optional, you can proceed with the given default settings.

VM Configurations *	🖵 centosb	Dk			_
	🗟 Genera	al 🗒 Virtual Disk 🕀 Virtual Network	Other Settings		
	Disk(s) D	Disk Name	Total Size	Restore To	Advanced
	<b>_</b>	[15TB-FC] centosbk/centosbk_0.vmdk	50GB	Auto-select 🗸	Advanced 🕂
	<b>~</b>	[15TB-FC] centosbk/centosbk_1.vmdk	50GB	Auto-select 🗸	Advanced 🕂

In the **Disk(s)** column, there are checkboxes for the VM virtual disks, when a VM has multiple disks, you can choose to restore specific disk(s) without having to restore all the disks of the VM. But if you don't restore the disk on which the operating system is installed, the restored VM will not be bootable, you need to re-install a new operating system or mount the restored disk to another VM to be able to access this virtual disk.

In **Restore To** column, you can select datastore to which the virtual disk will be restored. By default, Vinchin will automatically select a datastore to restore the VM virtual disk.

By clicking on **Advanced**, you can setup the disk provisioning options. But the virtual disk interface type cannot be configured, it should be kept as original interface type.

Disk(s) Disk Nar	ne		Total Size	Restore To		Advanced
<b>~</b>	[15TB-FC] centosbk/centosbk_0.v	mdk	50GB	Auto-select	*	Advanced =
Original Name:	[15TB-FC] centosbk/centosbk_0.vmd	k				
Disk Provisioning:	Thin Provision(Original)	~				
Interface:	VMware Paravirtual(Original)	~				

**Virtual Network**: Virtual Network settings are also optional. It allows you to select the virtual network to be connected to and the MAC address assignment of the restored VM.

VM Configurations *	🖵 centosbk				
	를 General 🛛 🖁 Virtual Disk	Virtual Network     Oth	er Settings		
	NIC(s) VM Network Interface Connect to Advanced				
			Source to	Advanced	
	<ul> <li>Netwo</li> </ul>	rk adapter 1	Auto-select	<ul> <li>Advanced +</li> </ul>	
	Expand a VM to configure its restore configur				

In the **Connect to** column, you can select a desired virtual network for specific virtual network interface of the VM, by default it will automatically select one from the available virtual networks.

By clicking on Advanced, you can setup the MAC address assignment for the virtual network interface.

NIC(s)	VM Network Interface		Connect to	Advanced
	Network ada	apter 1	Auto-select	✓ Advanced ■
Туре	e: VMXNET 3(Original)	~		
MAC Add	Auto Generate			
	Customized MAC Original MAC			

By default, the virtual platform will auto generate a new MAC address for the VM, but you can also use the original MAC address or customize the VM MAC address if you prefer.

**Other Settings**: Currently, Other Settings option will not present to all VM restore job settings. This option will present for certain virtualizations for some additional configurations of the VM restore job.

🖵 centosbk	
를 General 🛛 🖁 Virtual Disk	Virtual Network     Other Settings
Target VM Folder	Encryption password:
Data Encryption	

If the VM backup data is encrypted (Data Encryption enabled in backup job), when restoring the VM you need to provide the data encryption password for verification under Other Settings tab, otherwise without the data encryption password, the VM cannot be restored.

#### Step 3: Restore Strategy

For the job schedule, you can configure the VM restore job as once-off restore or restore as scheduled.

🔏 General Strategy	⇐ Transmission Strategy	
	O Schedule Restore at once	+
	Mode Once-off Restore  Once-off Restore Restore As Scheduled	
	O Speed Controller	+
	88 Advanced Strategy Multithread: 3	+

If you choose **Once-off Restore**, the restore job will start running right after the job has been created. If you choose **Restore As Scheduled**, you need to set restore schedules. After this, the job will run as scheduled. *Note* 

Only if you need to regularly restore the VM(s) to certain status from backups, you can choose to use Restore As Scheduled option, otherwise please use Once-off Restore.

For **Speed Controller**, it works the same principle as the VM backup jobs.

For **Advanced Strategy**, you can configure multithreading for the VM restore job, and it works the same principle as multithreading for the VM backup jobs.

For Transmission Strategy, please refer to Create Backup Job.

#### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After finishing the above settings, you are able to review and confirm all settings here. Click Submit to confirm creating this job.

A New VM Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 ✓ Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Job Name :	VMware vSphere Restore1 Specify a customized job name if needed.		
Restore Point			
Selected Restore Point(s):	VMware vSphereVM Restore 192.168.124.10/Datacenter/192.168.64.72/centosbk(2021-11-16.16:29:29)		
Restore Destination			
Restore Path:	Restore to vsphere7.0(192.168.124.10) -> 192.168.64.72		
	Restored VM name(s): centosbk_20211116162929		
Restore Strategy			
Mode:	Once-off Restore		
Transmission Strategy:	Transfer via : LAN Backup Proxy: OFF		
Advanced Strategy:	Multithread : 3		
Speed Controller:	N/A		

Note

If this VM restore job is configured as "Restore now", it will start restoring the VM(s) right after the creation of this job.

# **Restore Job Operations**

After creating a new restore job, you will be redirected to the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, and you'll be able to see the VM restore job you created in the job list.

<b>66</b> C	Current Job 🧐 History Job								
•	New Job ~						Search by job name	Search	Q Advanced search
	Job Name	Module	Job Type	Create Time	Status 🔶	Speed 🕴	Progress 🕴	Creator	Operation
+	VMware vSphere Restore1	VMware vSphere	Restore	2020-10-09 13:52:17	Running	-	0.00%	admin	

If the job is once-off restore, you should see the job in running status, if the job is supposed to "restore as scheduled", then you should see the job in pending status.

If you want to manually start the job, please click on **Options**, and then select **Start Job** to run it manually. And by clicking on the job name and you'll be able to view the job details.

Job Details			🗲 Back
🚘 Job Flow	<li>Summary</li>	Handwanced	
117MB/s 96MB/s 76MB/s 39MB/s 20MB/s 20MB/s 13:48:42 13:49:21 13:50:00 13:50:39 13:51:18 13:51:57 13:52:36 13:53:15 Job Progress 5.84%	Job Name : Job Type : Job Status : Total Size : Processed: Start Time: Duration :	VMware vSphere Res Restore[VMware vSp Running 100GB 5.84GB 2020-10-09 13:52:23 00:01:08	here]
I Run Log			
Disk (vsanDatastore) c6fa7f5f-afaa-c110-5adb-ac1f6b6817b8/ubuntu_84_112_2020_10_09_10_08_21_0 vmdk' transport mode is 'LAN'			2020-10-09 13:52:54
Transfering vm ubuntu_84_112_2020_10_09_10_08_21's disk '[vsanDatastore] c6fa7f5f-afaa-c110-5adb-ac1f6b6817b8/ubuntu_84_112_2	020_10_09_10_08_2	1_0.vmdk' backup data	2020-10-09 13:52:49
Rebuilding VM/ubuntu_84_112_2020_10_09_10_08_21'			2020-10-09 13:52:25
Starting restoring VM/ubuntu-84.112'			2020-10-09 13:52:23
Capturing restored data size			2020-10-09 13:52:23
Capturing restore VM list			2020-10-09 13:52:23
✓ Activating the restore job			2020-10-09 13:52:23

Run Log: The logs of the currently running restore job. VM List: The list of VMs that will be restored by this job.

<b>⊮</b> Ru	n Log	🖵 VM List 🤊 Histo	ry Job								
	No.	VM Name	Job Type	Total Size	Data Size	Transfer Size	Written Size	Speed	Progress	Status	Description
+	1	ubuntu-84.112	Restore	100GB	97.94GB	72.44GB	72.44GB	112.8MB/s	73.96%	Running	

**History Job**: for a "Once-off Restore" job, this job will be auto-deleted after restoring completed and there will be no data to be displayed. If you've set "Restore as scheduled", you can review all the history running logs of this restore job.

#### Warning

During a restore process, do not power on the VM before the restore job is completed, otherwise the VM data will be damaged or lost.

# **Instant Restore**

VM Instant Restore helps to recover a VM within 1 min, minimizes the downtime of critical businesses. It can be very helpful in emergency situations to directly start a VM from its backup data, without the need to transfer backup data back to production storage then resume the VM.

#### Note

Instant Restore is currently not supported with Microsoft Hyper-V and OpenStack in Vinchin Backup & Recovery v6.5.

### Create Instant Restore Job

To create an Instant Restore job, please go to **VM Backup** > **Instant Restore** page, select a target VM restore point under your virtual infrastructure which you want to instantly recover. You can quickly find the target restore point by specifying backup node and selecting Group by VMs or Group by Restore Points accordingly.

* New Job		
R	Restore Point *	All nodes
		Search by keyword

#### Note

The restore point to be used for instant restore can be a full backup restore point, an incremental backup restore point or a differential backup restore point, but you can only select one restore point for each instant restore job.

Select a host as the restore destination where you want to run the instant restored VM, and select the backup node IP/domain where the backup storage is mounted.

Target Host *	☐         ∰ vsphere7.0(192.168.124.10)           □         ☐         192.168.64.71           □         ⓒ         192.168.64.72           □         ☑         192.168.64.73	
	Please select a host where to run the VM of instant restore.	
Backup Node *	192.168.120.20 👻	
	Please select a backup node where the restore point located and make sure it is connected with the target host. If not found the right node or the given node is not connectable, you can manually enter a node address	

When a host is selected, in the VM configurations section it will show loading state, it will take a few seconds to request for the virtual platform resources information.

Under General tab, you are able to set VM name, power state, CPU and RAM size for the instant restore VM.

VM Configurations *	🖵 centosbk		_
	😤 General 💾 Virtual Disk 🕀 Virt	ual Network 💮 Other Settings	
	Name & Status	Restored VM Name : *	
	CPU	centosbk_20211117151421_instant_Restore	~
	RAM	Power on the VM after restoring "	

Under **Virtual Disk** tab, the virtual disk settings are view-only, because instant restore will use VM backup data to run the VM on virtual platform, no data transmission to virtual platform datastore will be involved at this stage, so virtual disk settings are temporarily not needed.

centosbk				
😤 General 🖺 Virtual Disk 🌐 Virtual Network 💮 Other Setti	ngs			
Disk(s) Disk Name	Total Size	Restore To	Ad	vanced
[15TB-FC] centosbk/centosbk_0.vmdk	50GB	Auto-select	~	Advanced 🕂
[15TB-FC] centosbk/centosbk_1.vmdk	50GB	Auto-select	~	Advanced 🕂

**Virtual Network**: It allows you to select the virtual network to be connected to and the MAC address assignment of the restored VM.

😤 General 🔛 Virtual Disk 🖶 Virtual Network 🕞 Other Settings
NIC(s) VM Network Interface Connect to Advanced
✓ Network adapter 1 Auto-select ✓ Advanced +

In the **Connect to** column, you can select a desired virtual network for specific virtual network interface of the VM, by default it will automatically select one from the available virtual networks.

By clicking on Advanced, you can setup the MAC address assignment for the virtual network interface.

NIC(s)	VM Network Interface	Connect to	Ad	dvanced
	Network adapter 1	Auto-select	~	Advanced =
Type:	VMXNET 3(Original)			
MAC Addr	Auto Generate			
	Customized MAC Original MAC			

By default, the virtual platform will auto generate a new MAC address for the VM, but you can also use the original MAC address or customize the VM MAC address if you prefer.

**Other Settings**: Currently, Other Settings option will not present to all VM restore job settings. This option will present for certain virtualizations for some additional configurations of the VM restore job.

🖵 centosbk			
🗟 General	🖺 Virtual Disk	Virtual Netwo	k 💮 Other Settings
Target VM Fo	lder	Encrypt	on password:
Data Encrypti	on		

If the VM backup data is encrypted (Data Encryption enabled in backup job), when restoring the VM you need to provide the data encryption password for verification under Other Settings tab, otherwise without the data encryption password, the VM cannot be restored.

Once done, click on OK button to submit the creation of the instant restore job.

# Instant Restore Job Operations

After creating a new instant restore job, you will be redirected to the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, and you'll be able to see the instant restore job you created in the job list.

<b>B</b> (	Current Job "D History Job									
•	New Job ~							Search by job name	Search	Q Advanced search
	Job Name	Module	Job Type	Create Time	<b>v</b>	Status 🔶	Speed	Progress	Creator 🕴	Operation
+	Instant Restore test	VMware vSphere	Instant Restore	2020-10-09 14:52:16		Pending			admin	

To start the instant restore job, please click on **Options**, and then select **Start Job**. The job status will change to starting, it will take a while for the restore process to be completed, when the job status change to running, then the VM is restored. Now you click on the job name you'll see the instant restore job details.

VM Instant Restore		
	Backup Destination 192-168.84.100	Restore Destination:host.21.com VM Name :centos_84_110_2020_10_09_10_05_35VM_Instant_Restore
C Run Log		
<ul> <li>Instant restore job has started</li> </ul>		2020-10-09 20:11:44
<ul> <li>Creating instant restore VM'centos_84</li> </ul>	_110_2020_10_09_10_05_35VM_Instant_Restore'	2020-10-09 20:11:33
Sending "start intant restore job" mess	age	2020-10-09 20:11:32
✓ Mounting NFS storage		2020-10-09 20:09:56
<ul> <li>Connecting to virtual infrastructure</li> </ul>		2020-10-09 20:09:54

The logs will display the instant recovery job progress. After the job is completed successfully, you can power on the restored VM from your virtual platform. If you have preset "Power on the VM after restoring", the VM will be powered on automatically.

The instant restore VM runs directly from Vinchin backup server storage, the original backup data will not be modified, the new data will be written into a cache area. It is recommended to perform a VM migration to migrate all VM data (original backup data and cache data) to the production storage of the virtual platform during the non-production hours, please refer to <u>VM Migration</u> to migrate the VM data back to production storage.

If the instant restore is just for verifying the backup data availability, and you want to delete the instant restore job, you can go back to the current job list and click **Options** of the running instant restore job and then select **Stop**, after the job has been stopped, then click **Options** again and select **Delete**.

#### Warning

1. All the data of the instant restored VM is actually on Vinchin Backup Server/Node which is mounted to the selected host as NFS storage, if you delete the instant restore job, all the data of the restored VM will be deleted from the virtual platform host (including newly written data during the instant restore). If you need to reserve the restored VM and its newly written data, do not stop the job until you have migrated all data to the virtual platform host.

2. Do not create snapshot on the instant restore VM, or change any disk information. Otherwise, error will occur to the instant restore VM or it will crash.

# VM Migration

Click on **Options** and then select **Migration** of the instant restore job with which you wish to perform VM migration.

							S	earc	h by job name	Search	Q Advanced sear
	Job Name	Module	Job Type 🍦	Create Time	•	Status	Speed		Progress	Creator	Operation
E	VMware vSphere Instant Restore1	VMware vSphe	re Instant Restore	2021-12-27 17:22:09		Running			-	admin	실 Options ~
							Page <	1	> of 1  Vie	w 10 🗸 rei	50 🕨 Start Job
N	otice:										Aigration
Cli	ck on job name to view the job details.										Stop

Select a host where to migrate the VM. Then you can rename the migrated VM and choose to whether power on it after migration, set virtual disk configurations, virtual network configurations for the VM. For more details of the VM Configurations please refer to <u>Create VM Restore Job</u>.

🛍 New Job		
Target Host *	vsphere7(192.168.124.10)     192.168.64.72     9 192.168.64.74     192.168.64.75 Please select a target host where to run the migrated VM.	
VM Configurations *	Centosbk1_20211216150357_Instant_Restore	-
	😅 General 🖺 Virtual Disk 🌐 Virtual	Network 💮 Other Settings
	Name & Status Migrated V	I name : *
	CPU	_20211216150357_Instant_Restore_Migration
		M after migration : *
	OF	
Transfer via *	LAN 🗸	
Backup Proxy	Off <b>1</b>	
Multithread *	3 ^ ~	

For the password verification, it's not required to perform VM migration, because password verification had already been done during VM instant restore job creation process.

You can also select transmission mode. For a detailed description of each transmission mode, please refer to <u>Create Backup Job</u>. And multithreaded transmission for VM migration is also applicable.

Click OK to start the migration job. And in the current job list, the job type will change from **Instant Restore** to **Migration**.

0	current Jobs 🧐 History Jobs 🔤	VM Backup									
								Searc	h by job name	Search	Q Advanced search
	Job Name	Module	Job Type	Create Time	•	Status 🔶	Speed		Progress \$	Creator	Operation
Ð	VMware vSphere Instant Restore1	VMware vSphere	Migration	2021-12-27 17:22:09		Running			0.00%	admin	

Click on the job name and you'll be able to view the detailed process of the VM migration.



After migration completed, the migration job will automatically change back to instant restore job, and this job is still in a running status. But the VM created by instant restore job will be powered off and the services will be taken over by the migrated VM. There will be around one minute of service down time, when Vinchin Backup Server tries to power off the instant restored VM and power on the migrated VM. If you didn't enable **Power on the VM after restoring** option, then you'll have to manually power it on.

Once VM migration is done, you are able to stop the instant restore job and delete it. All data including the cache data generated during the instant restore VM runtime will be all migrated to the production storage. *Warning* 

Do not power on the migrated VM before the whole process is successfully done, otherwise the VM migration will fail.

# **Granular Restore**

### Create Granular Restore Job

Granular Restore feature allows you to recover files or folders from the VM backup restore point, you don't have to restore the entire virtual machine for the purpose of recovering some files.

To create a granular restore job, please go to **VM Backup** > **Granular Restore** page, you will see all the available restore points under your virtual infrastructure.

Select one restore point where you can find your target file. The restore point can be a full, an incremental or a differential restore point.

When done selecting the restore point, you may rename the granular restore job if necessary, then click on OK button to submit.

# **Granular Restore Job Operations**

Once you finished creating the granular restore job, you'll be redirected to the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page. The newly created granular restore job will be listed in the current job list in pending status.

<b>B</b> (	Current Job 🤊 History Job								
<b>~</b> 1	New Job ~						Search by job name	Search	Q Advanced search
	Job Name	Module	Job Type	Create Time	Status 🔶	Speed	Progress 🕴	Creator 🕴	Operation
+	Granular Restore test	VMware vSphere	Granular Restore	2020-10-09 16:14:18	Pending			admin	

To run the granular restore job, please click on **Options**, then select **Start Job**. And the job status will change into preparing. The preparation process will take several seconds to several minutes depending on the VM size and the performance of Vinchin Backup Server hardware. After this, the status will change to running.

Summary				💾 Granu	ular Restore File List			
Virti Res	o Status : tual Machine: store Point : ieration :	Running ubuntu-84.112 2020-10-09 10:08:21		Group by	les >	Size	File system	Search by na
Instructions:     1.Click 'Optio	ons' and click 'Start Job' to browse the	VM file list		1				*
	arget file and you are able to download							
	arget file and you are able to download		2020-10-09 16:19:13					
₿ Run Log	rget file and you are able to download		2020-10-09 16:19:13 2020-10-09 16:19:13					
Run Log     start granular res	rget file and you are able to download store job done set vm info							

When you get running status, please click on the job name to browse the file list of the VM.

In the **Granular Restore File List** column, you are able to retrieve the desired files or folders. You can also organize the file list by system directory structure, physical disk device and LVM as per your convenience. Enter the target directory, find the target files or folders and click on the  $\stackrel{4}{=}$  button to download.

Granular Restore File List			
roup by 🖹 System directory structure ~			
← All files > /		Sea	arch by name
ile name	Size	Edit time	Operation
bin	-	2020-09-23 14:57:01	±
boot		2020-09-23 15:31:43	*
dev		2020-09-23 14:45:47	*
etc	-	2020-09-23 16:01:29	*
home		2020-09-23 15:31:17	*
initrd.img	60.49MB	2020-09-23 15:31:43	<u>*</u>
initrd.img.old	60.49MB	2020-09-23 15:31:43	*
lib		2020-09-23 14:57:01	*
lib32		2019-04-17 02:51:49	*
lib64		2020-09-23 14:45:47	*
libx32		2019-04-17 02:51:49	*
lost+found		2020-09-23 14:45:17	*
media		2020-09-23 14:45:47	*
mnt		2019-04-17 02:51:51	*

The downloaded files will be in the original format, while the downloaded folders will be a .tar.gz package, use the below command to decompress the package then you get all files of the target folder.

tar -zxvf foldername.tar.gz

#### Note

Once you have done retrieving the files, please return to current job list, and stop the granular restore job. As if the granular restore job keeps running, certain system resources will always be occupied. And if the job is no longer needed, you can also delete the job from the current job list.

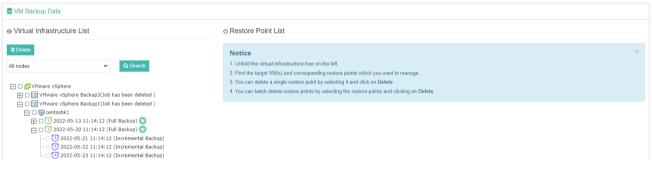
# **Backup Data**

After running each VM backup job session, all the VM backup data can be found and managed from VM Backup > Backup Data page.

# View Backup Data

By default, all VM backups of all backup nodes from Vinchin backup infrastructure will be displayed, if you wish to view backups of a specific backup node, please select a node from the dropdown list.

The VM backup data is organized with a Virtual Infrastructure > Backup Job > Virtual Machine > Restore Point structure as shown below.



Each restore point is named with the timestamp of its creation and will be marked with its backup type. To view more information of the restore points, simply click on the VM name, all the restore points of the selected VM will be listed in the right with more detailed information.

		tore Point List VMware vSph					
Delete							Q Advanced se
nodes v Q Search	No.	Time Point	🔻 Туре	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Operation
- 🖸 🔁 VMware vSphere	1	2022-05-23 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	0B	0B	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	소 Options ~
C      Wware vSphere Backup3(Job has been deleted )     D      D      Wware vSphere Backup1(Job has been deleted )	2	2022-05-22 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	0B	0B	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	셜 Options ~
白 □  centosbk1 由 □ ⓒ 2022-05-13 11:14:12 (Full Backup) ໜ 由 □ ⓒ 2022-05-20 11:14:12 (Full Backup) ໜ	3	2022-05-21 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	14MB	4.68MB	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	소 Options ~
H- 0 2022-03-20 11:14:12 (Full Backup)	4	2022-05-20 11:14:12	Full Backup	1.62GB	925.02MB	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	한 Options ~
	5	2022-05-19 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	46MB	16.28MB	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	✿ Options ∽
	6	2022-05-18 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	78MB	28.22MB	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	실 Options ~
	7	2022-05-17 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	0B	0B	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	소 Options ~
	8	2022-05-16 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	0B	0B	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	소 Options ~
	9	2022-05-15 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	0B	0B	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	실 Options ~
	10	2022-05-14 11:14:12	Incremental Backup	0B	0B	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.120.17))	♦ Options ~

You can get more information like the actual data size, written size and the storage which is used to store the restore point data.

To search specific restore point(s), you can use the **Search** button on the left or use the **Advanced search** button at the right side of the **Restore Point List**.

# **Retention Tags**

The purpose of using the retention tags is to avoid the general retention policy from purging some specific backups and keep them for a longer time period. There are 4 types of retention tags in Vinchin Backup & Recovery. **W**: the weekly GFS retention tag (applicable for full backups).

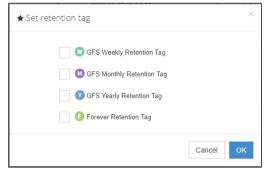
**M**: the monthly GFS retention tag (applicable for full backups).

**Y**: the yearly GFS retention tag (applicable for full backups).

F: the forever retention tag (applicable for all types of backups).

The **W**, **M** and **Y** GFS retention tags can be either pre-configured in a VM backup job by enabling GFS retention to tag specific restore points automatically or can be manually set. While the **F** tag can only be manually set.

To manually set retention tags, please go to VM Backup > Backup Data page. By selecting a VM from a backup job, all the restore points will be listed on the right, find the restore point which you wish to set/unset retention tags and click **Options** button, and then select **Set Retention Tag**.



In the popup dialog you can set/unset retention tags for the selected restore point. GFS retention tags are only applicable for full restore points, forever retention tag is applicable for all types of restore points.

If GFS retention had been enabled in the backup job, the manually tagged restore points' retention time complies with the GFS retention time configured in the backup job. When the GFS retention tag exceeded the retention time defined in the VM backup job, the oldest tag will be removed and the corresponding restore point will be purged by the general retention policy.

If GFS retention is not enabled in the backup job, the manually tagged restore points will be reserved forever. As for the forever retention tag, once it has been set, the tagged restore point will be reserved forever.

For GFS retention tag, there can be only one full restore point tagged as weekly full backup of each week (same for the monthly and yearly retention tag). If there's already a full restore point had been tagged for the week, there will not be the second one to be tagged and it will fail to manually set the second GFS tag for the week (same for the monthly and yearly retention tag).

Forever retention tag works independently with the GFS retention tags, a restore can be tagged with GFS retention and forever retention tag at the same time, when the GFS retention tag expires, the forever retention tag will still remain and the restore point will be retained forever.

# Delete Backup Data

We recommend configuring comprehensive retention policies for the VM backup jobs to automatically purge the out-of-date backups instead of manual deletion of the backup data. It is a highly risk operation by deleting the backup data manually. If you have to do this, please follow the below instructions.

To delete VM backup data, please go to VM Backup > Backup Data page. There are two approaches to perform the deletion, batch (or single) deletion of restore points from the left side tree view and single restore point deletion from the right side restore point list view.

#### Deleting restore point(s) from the tree view.

Please unfold the virtual infrastructure and the associated backup job, and unfold the VM which you wish to delete backup data from. Then select the restore point(s) you wish to be deleted and click on the **Delete** button on the top left of the tree view. You'll have to provide you password to confirm the deletion of selected restore point(s).

If it's a standalone full restore point, no incremental or differential restore points dependent on it, you can select and delete the standalone full restore point directly.

If it's a backup chain, formed by a full restore point and a series of incremental (or differential) restore points dependent on the full restore point, you can only delete the backup chain from the tree view.

#### Deleting restore point from the restore point list view.

Please select a VM from the left tree, the associated restore points will be listed on the right-side list view. By clicking on the **Options** button of a specific restore point and selecting **Delete** you are able to delete that single restore point, no matter it's full, incremental or differential.

If it's a standalone full restore point, no incremental restore points or differential restore points dependent on it, you can delete the standalone full restore point directly.

If it's a backup chain formed by a full restore point and a series or incremental restore points dependent on the full restore point, while deleting the incremental restore point in the end of the incremental chain, it will be directly deleted, if you delete any other restore point it will lead to data blocks merging with the next restore point. For example, you got an incremental backup chain, full on Monday, incremental on Tuesday and Wednesday, if you delete the incremental restore point of Tuesday, its data blocks will be merged with Wednesday incremental restore point. This mechanism can guarantee the backup data consistency.

If it's a backup chain formed by a full restore point and a series of differential restore points dependent on the full restore point, while deleting the full restore point is not allowed but you can delete the differential restore points, and there will not be data blocks merging required.

# Virtual Infrastructure

# Add Virtual Infrastructure

If your virtual infrastructure is VMware vSphere or Huawei FusionCompute, please refer to <u>Register Virtual</u> <u>Infrastructure</u>. For other virtual infrastructures, please first refer to <u>Install Backup Plugin</u>, then refer to <u>Register</u> <u>Virtual Infrastructure</u>.

### Virtual Infrastructure Management

After adding the virtual infrastructures, you can find and manage them on the **Resources** > **Virtual Infrastructure** page.

+ Add	C Ec	dit 💼 Delete CA	Search by name		Search Q Advanced search					
	No.	IP Address	Name	Platform	Version	Username 🗍	Last Sync	•	Status	Operation
	1	192.168.66.213	CitrixHypervisor	Citrix XenServer/Citrix Hypervisor	8.2.0	root	2021-12-31 14:08:15		All Authorized	Sync 🗸 Auth
	2	192.168.124.10	vSphere7	VMware vSphere	7.0.2	administrator@vsphere.local	2021-12-31 13:14:06		All Authorized	😂 Sync 🗸 Auth
	3	192.168.124.50	oVirt4.4.9	Red Hat Virtualization(RHV)/oVirt	4.4.9.5-1.el8	admin@internal	2021-12-31 13:13:52		All Authorized	Sync 🗸 Auth
	4	192.168.124.60	SangforHCI	Sangfor HCI	6.3.0_R1	admin	2021-12-30 16:34:01		All Authorized	Sync ✓ Auth

Select a virtual infrastructure and click on the **Edit** button to edit the connection settings of the virtual infrastructure, or click on the **Delete** button to delete the virtual infrastructure from Vinchin Backup Server. The virtual infrastructure cannot be deleted when it is included in a running job. You must delete the running job before deleting the virtual infrastructure.

If your virtual infrastructure is RHV, oVirt or OLVM, and if you had enabled engine backup, the backup data can be managed by clicking on the **Engine Backup Data** button.

🔳 Lis	st of Engine	Backups							
💼 De	elete \land Ba	ack							
	No.	IP Address	Name 🕴	Platform	Backup Time 🚽	Size 🔶	Node 🕴	Storage	Manage
	1	192.168.66.57	192.168.66.57	Redhat RHV/oVirt	2020-10-18 19:13:00	4.1MB	localhost.localdomain	Backup Disk1	¥
	2	192.168.66.57	192.168.66.57	Redhat RHV/oVirt	2020-10-17 19:13:00	4.06MB	localhost.localdomain	Backup Disk1	¥
	3	192.168.66.57	192.168.66.57	Redhat RHV/oVirt	2020-10-16 19:13:00	4.07MB	localhost.localdomain	Backup Disk1	¥

The engine backup data can be downloaded from Vinchin Backup Server, then to be uploaded to the engine host of the Red Hat RHV, oVirt or OLVM to restore the engine host configurations.

For the VM creation/deletion or any other updates of the VMs on your virtual infrastructure, you can rely on the **Auto Refresh** of the virtual infrastructures or you can manually perform the refresh. Click on the **Auto Refresh** button, you can set the auto-refresh time (default 60 minutes, minimum 5 minutes). And in the virtual infrastructure list, you can click on the **Sycn** button to manually refresh the corresponding virtual infrastructure.

From the virtual infrastructure list, you can also change the authorization status of the hosts in the virtual

infrastructure by clicking on the **Auth** button, for more details, please refer to <u>Register Virtual Infrastructure</u>. By clicking on the IP address of a virtual infrastructure, you can check the virtual machines on this virtual infrastructure.

Virtual Infrastructure List	🖵 Vir	tual M	achine		
Hosts & Clusters ~	+ Ad	d to exist	ing job		
- 🗗 VMware vSphere		No.	VM Name	Status 🔶	Operation
- 🗗 vSphere7(192.168.124.10) Refre		1	122.10 - zentao	Poweron	✿ Options ∽
- Red Hat Virtualization(RHV)/oVirt		2	122.20 - web	Poweron	
]-🚭 Sangfor HCI		3	122.250 - email	Poweron	✿ Options ∽
		4	centos8seafile	Poweron	✿ Options ∽
		5	centosbk1	Poweroff	✿ Options ∽
		6	✓ centosbk2	Poweroff	✿ Options ∽
		7	Hyper_v_2016_12440	Poweroff	✿ Options ~
		8	J_10_mysql8.0.20	Poweron	✿ Options ~
		9	J_11_postfix	Poweroff	✿ Options ∽
		10	J_121_11_V2am	Poweroff	실 Options ~

By selecting the VMs from the virtual machine list and click on the **Add to existing job** button, you can add the selected VMs to an existing backup job. Or you can add a single VM to an existing backup job by clicking on the **Options** button then select **Add to existing job**.

And by clicking on the **Options** button, you'll have options to suspend or power off a VM in **Poweron** status, or if the VM is in **Poweroff** status, you'll have option to power it on.

# **Backup Proxy**

Vinchin Backup Proxy is an optional component for backup VMware vSphere virtual infrastructure, and it needs to be installed on the ESXi server as a VM. If you are using other virtual platforms, please just skip this part. If Vinchin Backup Server is installed on the ESXi server as a VM, then a Backup Proxy is not needed. To add a Backup Proxy to Vinchin Backup Server, please go to VM Backup > Backup Proxy page and click on the Add button to add the Backup Proxy.

C Add Proxy		
IP/Domain *	192.168.84.102	~
	Proxy IP address or domain	
Name	vmproxy	~
	Give a name for this Proxy	
Port *	22790	
	Proxy port number	

In the IP/Domain field, please enter the IP address of the Backup Proxy.

In the Name field, you can optionally define a customized name for the Backup Proxy.

In the **Port** field, the default port number should not be modified.

When done the above settings, click on **OK** button to add the Backup Proxy to the Backup Server.

B	B Proxy										
+	+ Add C Add Delete										
		N	No.	Name 🍦	IP/Domain	Port 🔶	Status	Create Time	Creator		
Ŧ		1		vmproxy	192.168.84.102	22790	Online	2020-09-17 17:22:37	admin		

By selecting the Proxy and clicking on the Edit button, you are able to edit the Proxy settings.

C Edit Proxy		
IP/Domain *	192.168.84.102	
IF/Domain		
	Proxy IP address or domain	
DNS Entries *	127.0.0.1 localhost localhost localdomain localhost4 localhost4.localdomain4 ::1 localhost localhost.localdomain localhost6 localhost6.localdomain6 192.168.64.21 host.21.com 192.168.64.23 host.22.com 192.168.64.23 host.23.com	
	Format: IP hostname (The IP address and the hostname should be separated by at least one space. Each entry should be kept on an individual line.)	
Name	vmproxy	
	Give a name for this Proxy	
Port *	22790	
	Proxy port number	
Process management service listening port *	22780	
	Process management service listening port	
Process service port range *	50000 ~ 60000	

The DNS Entries should be synchronized from the Backup Server if DNS settings had been configured on the DNS Sync option is enabled on the Backup Server. Otherwise, you can configure the DNS settings manually here. And usually the port number settings should not be changed.

# Database Backup

# SQL Server Database Backup and Restore

### Install Database Backup Agent

The supported Windows systems including Windows Server 2008, 2012, 2016 and 2019.

To install SQL Server Database backup plugin, you can open Vinchin Backup Server web console from the target Windows system directly, on the login screen, click on **Download Backup Plugin** to go to the backup plugin download page.



In the Type dropdown list, please select **Database Backup Agent**. In the **Operating System (OS)** dropdown list, please select Windows. Then click on Download button to download.

The downloaded database backup plugin should be an executable exe file.

Name	Date modified	Туре	Size	
Svinchin-database-agent.windows.6.5.0.15504.exe	11/3/2021 5:43 PM	Application	3,663 KB	

To install the backup plugin, please right click on it and select **Run as administrator** to install the backup plugin with administrator permissions.

🌄 Setup - VinchinDatabaseClient	– 🗆 X
	Welcome to the VinchinDatabaseClient Setup Wizard
	This will install VinchinDatabaseClient V6.5.0.15504 on your computer.
	It is recommended that you close all other applications before continuing.
	Click Next to continue, or Cancel to exit Setup.
	Next > Cancel

Please follow the installation wizard to complete the database backup agent installation.

Once the installation completed, there will be two services 'database\_backup\_service' and 'database\_transfer\_service' running which could be found in Windows **Services**. Then you have successfully installed the SQL Server backup plugin on the Windows system.

Processes	Performance	Users	Details	Services			
Name	^		PID	Description	Status	Group	^
🔍 database	e_backup_servi	ce	3172	database_backup_service	Running		
🔍 database	e_transfer_servi	ce	5620	database_transfer_service	Running		

There are 3 ports: 20200, 20300, 20400 will be opened on your database server while installing the database backup agent.

If you want to use Windows administrator to backup the database, please edit the database backup services to log on as **administrator** from Windows **Services**.

Please first stop 'database\_backup\_service' and 'database\_transfer\_service' services by right clicking on them and select **Stop**.

🍓 Services				- 🗆	×
File Action View Help					
⇐ ➡   📰 🖾 🕰   🛛 🖬   🕨 🔳 🕕					
Services (Local)					
database_backup_service	Name	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log ^
Stop the service Pause the service Restart the service	database_backup         database_transfer_         DataCollectionPub         DCOM Server Proc         Device Association         Device Install Servi         Device Manageme         Device Setup Mana         DevQuery Backgro         DHCP Client         Diagnostic Policy S         Diagnostic System russ         Distributed Link Trackin         Distributed Transactior         dmwappushsvc         DNS Client         Downloaded Maps Ma         Embedded Mode	Start Stop Pause Resume Restart All Tasks > Refresh Properties Help The Diagno Coordinates WAP Push The DNS Cli Nager Windows se The Embed	Running Running Running Running Running Running	Automatic Automatic Manual (Trig Automatic Manual (Trig Manual (Trig Manual (Trig Automatic Automatic (D Manual Automatic (D Manual (Trig Automatic (T Automatic (T Manual (Trig Manual (Trig Manual (Trig	Loc Loc Loc Loc Loc Loc Loc Loc Loc Loc
	🖏 Enterprise App Manage			Manual (Trig	Loc ⊻
Extended Standard	<				>
Stop service database_backup_service on Local Computer					

When these 2 services had been stopped, right click on them and select **Properties > Log On**, select log on as **This account**, then fill in the administrator account name and password, click on **Apply** and restart the services.

database_backup_ser	vice Properties (Local Computer)	×							
General Log On Re	covery Dependencies								
Log on as:									
Local System account     Allow service to interact with desktop									
① This account:	administrator Browse								
Password:	•••••								
Confirm password:	•••••								
	OK Cancel <u>A</u> pply	/							

Check the database user permissions which you wish to perform SQL Server database backup, at least ensure the

Login Properties - sa	-		×
Select a page General Server Roles Viser Mapping Status	Soript ▼ ? Help Server role is used to grant server-wide security privileges to a user Server roles: <ul> <li>bulkadmin</li> <li>dboreator</li> <li>diskadmin</li> <li>processadmin</li> <li>yublic</li> <li>serveradmin</li> <li>setupadmin</li> <li>stysadmin</li> </ul>		
Connection Server: WIN-RC7F595QF3V Connection: WIN-RC7F595QF3V\Administrat ₩ View connection properti Progress Ready			
	OK	Cano	el

user have sysadmin permission, check the details as below.

# Register Database Backup Agent

After the installation of Vinchin database backup agent, please open Vinchin Backup Server web console and go to **Database Backup > Backup Agent** page to register the database backup agent.

Click on Add Agent button to start registering a database backup agent.

<b>∔</b> Add Agent		×
IP Address *	192.168.120.24 Enter IP address of the database host.	~
Name *	SQL Server Type a name for the agent host.	~
Management Port *	20200 🗸	
Transmission Port	20300 Port used for backup data transmission.	
Agent Local Port	20400 Port for agent local use.	
		Cancel OK

In the IP Address field, enter the IP address of the database server which you wish to backup, database agent must be installed on the server.

In the Name field, you can optionally enter a name for identification. For the Management Port, Transmission Port and Agent Local port, please use default settings and do not change them.

When done, click on **OK**, then in the **Agent List** it will show the database backup agent you just added.

Backup Agent				Add database backup agent ×					
-গু A	gent List		Add	Add database backup agent success					
+A	dd Agent 🔒 Delete Agent								
	Host name 🔶	Name 🕴	IP Address	Operating System	Add Time 👻	Database Type	Licensed module	Status 🔶	Operation
	WIN-8KFK65AS09C	SQL Server	192.168.120.24	Windows(Windows Server 2016 Standard)	2021-12-20 16:23:09	Unidentified		Online	
						Pag	e < 1 → of 1	View 10	<ul> <li>records   Total 1 record(s)</li> </ul>

Once a database agent had been added, you need to license the database agent and authenticate the database instance before performing database backups.

Click on **Options** > **License** in the popup dialog, click on License checkbox to license the database backup agent.

& Agent Licen	se ×
	Database License: Total 10, Authorized 0, Unauthorized 10
Host name:	WIN-8KFK65AS09C
License	✓
	Сапсе ОК

🕫 Agent List									
+A	ld Agent 🔋 💼 Delete Agent								
	Host name	Name 🕴	IP Address	Operating System	Add Time	Database Type	Licensed module	Status	Operation
	WIN-8KFK65AS09C	SQL Server	192,168,120,24	Windows(Windows Server 2016 Standard)	2021-12-20 16:23:09	Unidentified	8	Online	② Options ∨

Click on **Options** > **Authentication** to authenticate the database instance for backup. In database type dropdown list, select SQL Server. It will automatically show database Instance of the database server. Select the Instance you wish to backup and click on **Authenticate** button.

C Database Instance Authentication							
Host Name	192.16	3.120.24(SQL Server)					
Database Type *	SQL	. Server	~				
	Databas	e type to be added.					
Select Instance *		Instance	Database Type	Version	User	Authentication Mode	Authentication Time
		MSSQLSERVER	SQL Server	-		-	
					Page < 1	> of 1   View 10	✓ records   Total 1 record(s)

There are two authentication modes, Windows Authentication and SQL Server Authentication.

If select **Windows Authentication**, agent will use the user which you logged in to connect the SQL Server database, when running database backup.

& Instance Authent	tication			×
Authentication Mode	Windows Authentication	~	0	

If select **SQL Server Authentication**, in the popup dialog, fill the **Username** and **Password** that database you want to use.

& Instance Auther	ntication		×
Authentication Mode	SQL Server Authentication	× (1)	
Username *	sa		
	Database instance user name.		
Password *			
	Password for database instance login.		
		Cancel	Save

#### Note

Whichever authentication mode you select, please ensure that the user must have database **sysadmin** permissions.

# SQL Server Database Backup

### Create Database Backup Job

To create database backup jobs, please go to **Database Backup** > **Backup** page. There are 4 steps to create a database backup job.

#### Step 1: Backup Source

First select database backup agent from left column, then expend SQL Server instance and select the databases which need to be backed up.

1 Backup Source	2 Backup Destination	3 Backup S	Strategies	4 Review & Con	firm
Database Backup Agents	SQL Server V	Search by database nam	S	elected Database	
Search by keyword	□- 🖥 192.168.91.13(WIN-KC7F595C	F3V)	MSSQLSER	VER/master	E
192.168.91.13(WIN-KC7F595QF3V)			MSSQLSER	VER/model	E
	⊡ 🖶 msdb ⊡ 🐨 🗮 ReportServer ⊡ 🐨 🚔 ReportServerTempDB		MSSQLSER	VER/msdb	E
	·····································		MSSQLSER	VER/ReportServer	E
	DWQueue		MSSQLSER	VER/ReportServerTempDB	2
			MSSQLSER	VER/DWDiagnostics	E
			MSSQLSER	VER/DWConfiguration	E
				VER/DWQueue	

#### Step 2: Backup Destination

A backup destination (backup storage) should be associated with this backup job.

1 v Backup Source	e 2 Backup Destination	3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
Target Node	localhost.localdomain(192.168.91.18)	~	
Target Storage	CIFS_NEIL_PC(CIFS Share, Capacity :331.51GB, Free CIFS_NEIL_PC(CIFS Share, Capacity :331.51GB, Free Local Disk_18(Local Disk, Capacity :49.97GB, Free Spa 1. Select a Backgrounder to fair this backup poir. 2. Select a storage on the node to save the backup data.	Space:314.84GB)	

In the **Target Node** dropdown list, you can select a backup node on which you want the backup data to be processed and stored.

In the Target Storage dropdown list, the storages belongs to the selected backup node can be selected.

When done selecting the backup storage, please click on **Next** button to continue.

#### Step 3: Backup Strategies

In the General Strategy it including Schedule, Speed Controller, Data Storage Policy and Retention Policy.

Database Backup Job		
1 v Backup Source	2 v Backup Destination 3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
🖉 General Strategy	⇒ Transmission Strategy @ Advanced Strategy	
0	Schedule	+
	Mode Backup as scheduled V	
	Schedule * Full Backup Differential Backup Dog Backup	
0	Speed Controller	+
8	Data Storage Policy Data Deduplication: OFF, Data Compression: ON	+
R	Retention Policy Restore Point(s), 30	+

In the Schedule field, you can configure the time schedule of the backup job, you can configure the job as a **Backup as Scheduled** job or a **Once-off Backup** job.

For a once-off backup job, the job will only run for once, and only full backup will be performed. You only have to appoint a time of when to start the backup job, in the Time Schedule field.

🖸 Schedule										
Mode	Once-off Bac	:kup						~		
Start Time *							×		0	
			N	over	nber	202	1	>		
Speed Control	ler	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa		
		31	1	2	3	4	5	6		
💾 Data Storage F	Policy Data [	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	on: ON	-
		14		16	17	18	19	20		
Retention Poli	CY Restore P	21	22	23	24	25	26	27		-
		28	29	30	1	2	3	4		
		5	6	7	8	9	10	11		

For a backup as scheduled job, you can schedule Full Backup, Differential Backup and Log Backup.

Here we take these three Backup as an example. Please set the backup mode and backup schedule as per your actual demands, then please click on **Next** to continue.

Mode	Backup as scheduled 🗸					
Schedule *	✓ Full Backup ✓ Differential Backup ✓ Log Backup ()					
	<ul> <li>Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)</li> </ul>					
	<ul> <li>Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)</li> </ul>	+				
	<ul> <li>Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)</li> </ul>	+				

Speed Controller is optional. It can be used to limit the transmission speed during database backup if needed. The speed controller policy can be configured as either As Scheduled or Permanent. An As Scheduled policy can be

ᢙ Speed Contro	ller	×
Policy	As Scheduled 🗸 🔞	
Schedule	Daily       Every week       Monday       Tuesday       Wednesday         ✓ Weekly       Thursday       Friday       Saturday         Monthly       Start Time       23:00:00       ⊘         Repeat End       23:30:00       ⊘	
Max Speed	15 ^ ~ MB/s <b>~</b> ()	
	Cancel	ок

configured to limit the backup speed on Daily, Weekly and Monthly basis.

A Parmanent policy will always limit the backup speed within the specified Max Speed.

🖓 Speed Contro	ller		×
Policy	Permanent	~ ()	
Max Speed	15 ^ ~	MB/s 🗸 🚯	
			Cancel OK

There are 2 options in Data Storage Policy section, Data Deduplication and Data Compression. By enabling these 2 options, the backup data will be deduplicated and compressed before saving into backup storage.

	OFF, Data Compression: ON		—
Data Deduplication	Оff	0	
Data Compression	On	0	

For the retention policy of the database backup, there are 2 retention mode, retain the database backups according to **Number of Restore Points** or **Number of Days**.

For the retention mode **Number of Restore Points**, the restore points will be counted by full restore points, including the differential backups and log backups dependent on this full backup.

For retention mode **Number of Days**, Vinchin Backup Server will save the restore points within the specified number of days.

Retention Policy Restore	Retention Policy Restore Point(s), 30											
Retention Mode	Number of Rest 🗸 👔											
Restore Points	Number of Restore Points Number of Days											

When the retention policy is triggered, the outdated restore points will be purged to comply with the retention policy.

In the transmission Strategy, you can choose to enable **Encrypted Transmission** for data safety. The backup data will be transferred through LAN by default.

1	✓ Backup Source	2 v Backup Destination	3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
		⇒ Transmission Strategy		
	Encrypted Transr	mission On 🚯		
	Trans	sfer via LAN 🗸 🐧		

Advanced Strategy including Check Database Integrity, SQL Server Compression and Page Checksum.

🖉 General Strategy 🗧 Transr	mission Strategy	@ Advanced Strategy		
	_			
Check Database Integrity	On	0		
SQL Server Compression	Off	0		
Page Checksum	On	0		

Check database integrity function is check database integrity and physical errors before the database backup job start.

SQL Server Compression is provided by SQL Server to reduce data transfer, data backup time and saves backup storage.

Page Checksum is used to verify the backup data during the transmission to avoid data damage.

#### Note

Between General Strategy Compressed Transfer and Advanced Strategy SQL Server Compression prefer only enable Compressed Transfer in general strategy. SQL Server Compression will use more CPU and memories.

#### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen. A job name can be specified for identification of the database backup job, and by clicking on the Submit button to create the backup job.

# Database Backup Job Operations

Once a database backup job had been created, you will be redirected to the Monitor Center > Jobs page.

æ	Current Jobs	History Jobs	VM Backup	File Backup	🛞 Database Backup								
								Search by	job	name	Search	Q	Advanced search
	Job Name		Module	Job Type	Create Time	•	Status 🕴	Speed		Progress 🕴	Creator		Operation
+	Database Back	up Job2	Database	Backup	2021-11-05 00:26:26		Pending				admin		실 Options ~

The status of the newly created job will usually be **Pending**, when the time condition matches the schedule, it will automatically run. And the status will change to Running, you can also see the transfer speed here within the job list.

Besides the Current Job list, there's a dedicated tab to show database backup jobs. More detailed information of database backup jobs, including database type, database agent info, backup node, next run time and some more detailed information dedicated for database backup will be given.

<b>8</b> (	Current Jobs 🤊	History	Jobs	B Database Backt	q								
									Search by	ob name		Search	Q Advanced search
	Job Name	Job	Type 🔅	Database Type 🔅	Agent 🔶	Mount Node	Next Run	Status 🛊	Duration	Speed	Trans	ferred Siz	e 🕴 Operation
Ŧ	Database Backup . ob2	Back	ιp	SQL Server	192.168.123.13	Main123.18(192.1 68.123.18)	2021-11-18 23:0 0:00	Pending					은 Options

By clicking on the job name you can check more detailed information on the Job Detail page.

For a scheduled backup job, after running one of the schedules, the status will change to Pending again and then wait for the next run.

For a once-off backup job, after running the job for once, it will be removed from the Current Job list. And you can find it from the History Job list.

# **Database Restore**

To restore databases from database backup restore points, please go to **Database Backup** > **Restore** page. There are 4 steps to restore databases from the database backup restore points.

#### Step 1: Restore Point

In the Restore Point dropdown list, select a backup node which stores the desired restore points.

Select a target database restore point under your database which you want to restore. You can quickly find the target restore point by searching the job name, database name or the date of the restore point. One restore job can only select one restore point.

A New Database Restore Job		
1 Restore Point	2 Restore Destination 3	Restore Strategy 4 Review & Confirm
Restore Point *	All nodes ~	Selected restore points
	Search by database name	2021-12-14 23:00:10 (Log Backup)
	日 : MySQL 中: 国 Database Backup Job1(Job has been deleted )	demo01
	□       SQL Server         □       □       SQL Server Backup()ob has been deleted )         □       □       □       SQL Server Backup()ob has been deleted )         □       □       □       2021-12-14 16:20:18 (Full Backup)         □       □       □       2021-12-14 16:20:16 (Differential Backup)         □       □       □       02021-12-14 23:00:00 (Differential Backup)         □       □       □       02021-12-14 23:00:00 (Differential Backup)         □       □       02021-12-14 23:00:00 (Differential Backup)         □       □       □       02021-12-14 23:00:00 (Differential Backup)         □       □       □       02021-12-15 23:00:01 (Differential Backup)         □       □       □       02021-12-16 15:10:01         □       □       □       02021-12-16 15:17:25 (Full Backup)         □       □       □       □       02021-12-16 15:17:28 (Full Backup)         □       □       □       □       □       021-12-16 15:17:28 (Full Backup)	

#### **Step 2: Restore Destination**

After selecting the desired restore point, please select the target database instance on which you wish to restore.

A New Database Restore Job		
1 v Restore Point	2 Restore Destination 3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Target Instance *	□ 🛱 192.168.120.24(SQL Server 2016) └ 🛛 🖥 MSSQLSERVER	
	Notice: To guarantee a successful database restore to the target database host, the database installation path, login credentials and instance name should be the same as the source database host.	×

#### Step 3: Restore Strategy

There are 2 options for database restore, Override Original Database and Create New Database. If you want to use the Override Original Database restore, please pay attention to this mode, it will directly override the database. It is recommended to use the Create New Database restore to first restore the data to a new path to verify the data then perform override original database restore.

A New Database Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Override Original Database	~ <b>(</b> )	
Rollback Time	Override Original Database Create New Database		
Speed Controller	\varTheta Speed Controller	+	

Select Create New Database need to edit database name, database file path, log file path. The path must be correct and have enough free disk space, the path will be automatically created during restore process.

A New Database Restore Job				
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3	Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Create New Database	~	0	
Database Name:	demo01_20211214230010			
Database File Path:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL13	3.MSSQL		
Log File Path:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL13	3.MSSQL		
Rollback Time	Off <b>1</b>			
Speed Controller	Speed Controller		+	

**Rollback Time**: only if you had selected a log backup restore point to restore, you are allowed to perform transaction rollback restore. If you disable rollback time it will restore to the latest time point (time point of when the selected backup was taken) by default.

You can select the rollback time in second level within the reference range of log rollback time, so you can rollback the database to the state of any desired time point.

A New Database Restore Job										
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore	Des	tinati	ion				3	Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Create New Database							~	0	
Database Name:	demo01_20211214230010									
Database File Path:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft	SQL	Serv	er\M	SSQ	L13.	MSS	QL		
Log File Path:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft	SQL	Serv	/er\M	SSQ	L13.	MSS	QL		
Rollback Time	On (1									
Select Rollback Time	2021-12-14 23:00:10					•	:	<b>***</b>		
	Reference range of log rollback ti 23:00:10		D	ecen	nber	202				
Speed Controller	Speed Controller		Мо						+	
opour controllor		28 5	29 6	30	1 8	2 9	3		T	
		5 12	0 13	14	° 15					
		19		21	22					
		26			29					
		2	3	4	5	6	7	8		

Same as database backup, while restoring databases, you can also configure speed controller to limit the database restore speed accordingly.

#### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen.

A New Database Restore Job	
1 v Restore Point	2
Job Name :	Database Restore Job1 Specify a customized job name if needed.
Restore Point	
Selected Restore Point(s):	SQL Server database restore 192.168.120.24/MSSQLSERVER/demo01(2021-12-14.23:00:10)
Restore Destination	
Restore Path:	192.168.120.24(SQL Server 2016)MSSQLSERVER
Restore Strategy	
Mode:	Create New Database New Database Namedemo01_20211214230010, Restore toC:/Program Files/Microsoft SQL Server/MSSQL 13 MSSQLSERVER Restore Logs toC:/Program Files/Microsoft SQL Server/MSSQL 13 MSSQLSERVER Rollback Time: ON, The log rollback time is : 2021-12-14 23:00:10
Speed Controller:	N/A

Once the job has been created, you'll be redirected to the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page.

As the database restore job is by default to be executed right after the creation of the job, so it will run automatically, when you see it in the current job list, it should be in running status already, and once completed, the job will be automatically deleted from the current job list.

After this you can browse the restored job from History Jobs. Your restored data will be found in the path you configured during creating the restore job.

# Database Backup Data

The database backup data can be managed from **Database Backup > Backup Data** page.

🛢 Database Backup Data		
Restore Points	o Restore Point List	
E Delete All nodes Search by keyword	Notice: 1. Expand the tree menu of the left to browse the database restore points. 2. Each restore point has its timestamp of backup creation.	×
	3. You can delete a single restore point by selecting it and click on Delete. 4. You can batch delete restore points by selecting the restore points and clicking on Delete.	
C C master 2021-11-18 17:21:01 (Full Backup) C 2021-11-18 17:21:41 (Full Backup)		

If you want to delete a restore point or multiple restore points, you can first select target restore point(s) from the left tree, and click on the **Delete** button. The differential backup and log backup cannot be deleted individually, they will be deleted along with the dependent full backup.

Restore Points		store Point List	SSQLSERVE	ER(192.168.1	23.13)mas	ster			
in Delete	No.	Time Point	Туре 🕴	Data Size	Written Si	ze Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star
All nodes   Search by keyword  Search by keyword  Search by keyword  D Search by keyword  D Search by keyword  Search by keywor		2021-11-18 17:21:41	Full Backu p	3.96MB	878.87KB	Disk Partitio n1 123.18 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		신 Options	2
□ · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	2	2021-11-18 17:21:01	Full Backu p	3.96MB	878.95KB	Disk Partitio n1 123.18 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		한 Options	· 7

When deleting backup data, you need to provide your login password to confirm the deletion, once deleted the data will be unrecoverable.

Please enter your login password to confirm the deletion.		×
	Cancel	ок

For the restore point list in the right column, you need to select a database in the left tree menu to view all restore points of the selected database. Information like backup type, data size, written backup size and storage will be given.

You can add remarks to the restore points, and click  $\stackrel{f}{\simeq}$  with full restore point to keep the full backup and its dependent differential and log backups to not be deleted by retention policy.

■ Restore Points		store Point List MSS	QLSERVER(19	2.168.123.13)-	master				
會 Delete	No.	Time Point	, Type 👙	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star
All nodes ✓ Search by keyword		2021-11-18 17:21:41	Full Backup	3.96MB	878.87KB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		♥ Options ~	☆
		2021-11-18 17:21:01	Full Backup	3.96MB	878.95KB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18)		셜 Options ~	☆

# MySQL Database Backup and Restore

For MySQL database backup, supported MySQL database versions are as follows:

- MySQL 5.5.62
- MySQL 5.6.51
- MySQL 5.7.33
- MySQL 5.7.35
- MySQL 8.0.20

The supported Linux distributions and versions including RHEL 6 to 8, Centos 6 to 8, Ubuntu x64 and Debian x64, MySQL Windows version is not supported on current version.

# Install Database Backup Agent

Please download MySQL database backup plugin from Vinchin Backup & Recovery login screen. Select the corresponding Linux distribution and version then click on the Download button to download the database backup plugin.

V	inchin	
Dowr	nload Backup Plugin	
Туре	Database Backup Agent 🗸	
os	REHL7/CentOS7 X64 Windows REHL6/CentOS6 X64 REHL7/CentOS7 X64 REHL8/CentOS8 X64	
	Ubuntu X64 Debian X64	

The downloaded backup plugin should be a .tar.gz package. Please upload the downloaded file to the database server for installation, to upload from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, please enter the Linux system command line interface and use the below command to decompress the package.

tar -zxvf vinchin-database-backup-agent-xxx.tar.gz

Where 'xxx' should be the actual file name of the database backup plugin package.

Enter the database backup plugin package folder.

cd vinchin-database-backup-agent-xxx

To install the backup plugin, run below command.

./db\_backup\_agent\_install

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, database backup and restore will no longer work on this database server).

./db\_backup\_agent\_uninstall

After installing the database backup plugin, please check its services use below command.

ps -aux | grep database | grep -v 'grep'

If you got the below output which has 3 services, bd\_backup\_watch\_dog.sh, database\_backup\_service and database\_transfer\_service, this means database backup agent installed successfully, the services are up running and ready for backup and restore.

[roo	ot@localhost	: /]#	ps -	aux   gi	ep data				
root	1300	Θ.Θ	0.0	115308	1516 ?	S	15:08	0:00	/bin/bash /opt/vinchin/database/db_backup_watch_dog.sh
root	t 1447	0.0	0.1	244780	6272 ?	Ssl	15:08	0:00	/opt/vinchin/database/database_backup_service -b
root	t 1479	0.0	0.1	70852	5016 ?	Ssl	15:08	0:00	/opt/vinchin/database/database transfer service -b
[roo	ot@localhost	: /]#							

If you want to run MySQL log backup, MySQL database needs binary logging enabled. You can check with below command from MySQL database command line interface.

show variables like '%log\_bin%';

If you got log\_bin value as on, which means binary logging is enabled.

<pre>mysql&gt; show variables like '%log_b </pre>	in%';
+   Variable_name +	Value
<pre>' ' log_bin   log_bin_basename   log_bin_index   log_bin_trust_function_creators   log_bin_use_v1_row_events   sql_log_bin</pre>	ON     /data/mysql/mysql-bin     /data/mysql/mysql-bin.index     OFF     OFF     ON
+ 6 rows in set (0.00 sec) mysql>	++

If binary logging is not enabled, it needs the database administrator to enable it.

# Register Database Backup Agent

After the installation, please open Vinchin Backup Server web console and go to **Database Backup > Backup Agent** page.

Click on Add Agent,	enter the IP	address an	d Name I	Management	Port set	as default
CIICK OIL AUG Agent,	enter the ir	auuress an	u ivanie, i	wanagement	FULL SEL	as uclauit.

🕇 Add Agent		×
IP Address *	192.168.120.7	~
Name *	MySQL5.7	~
Management Port *	Type a name for the agent host.	
Transmission	Port used for agent management.	
Agent Local	Port used for backup data transmission.	
Fut	Port for agent local use.	
		Cancel OK

Click on **OK**, then will show the database you just added.

🖑 A	gent List								
+A	dd Agent 🛭 🗎 Delete A	\gent							
	Host name	Name 🕴	IP Address 🔅	Operating System	Add Time 🗸	Database Type	Licensed module 🕴	Status 🗄	Operation
	server.mysql	MySQL5.7	192.168.120.7	Linux(CentOS Linux release 7.8.2003 (Cor e))	2021-12-20 16:32:5 8	Unidentified		Online	한 Options ~
						Page < 1	> of 1   View 10	✓ record	ds Total 1 record(s)

Once the database backup agent has been added, please click on **Options** > License to get it licensed for backing

& Agent Licen	se	×
	Database License: Total 10, Authorized 0, Unauthorized 10	
Host name:	server.mysql	
License	Database License Please license this database agent before backup.	
	Cancel	ОК

up.

After licensing the database backup agent, please click **Options** > **Authentication** to get the database instance authenticated.

Ag	gent List								
<b>-</b> Ad	ld Agent 🛛 💼 Delete A	\gent							
	Host name	Name 🔶	IP Address 🔶	Operating System	Add Time 💡	Database Type	Licensed module 🕴	Status 👌	Operation
/	server.mysql	MySQL5.7	192.168.120.7	Linux(CentOS Linux release 7.8.2003 (Cor e))	2021-12-20 16:32:5 8	Unidentified	0))	Online	신 Options

In Database Type dropdown list, select MySQL, and then click on Add Database Instance.

C Database Instance Authentication					
Host Name	192.168.120.7(MySQL5.7)				
Database Type *	MySQL 🗸				
	Database type to be added.				
Select Instance *	Add Database Instance				
	Instance	Database Type	Version	User	Authentication Time
			No available data		

In the popup dialog, type in the full path of the MySQL cnf file, leave the **Port** number with default value and provide database administrator **Username/Password**.

+ Add Database II	nstance	×
cnf File Location *	/etc/my.cnf	
	Path of the configuration file of MySQL database.	
Port *	3306	
	MySQL database port number.	
Username *	root	
	Database instance user name.	
Password *		
	Password for database instance login.	
	Cancel	Save

Click on save, then you have successfully added database instance.

Database Instance Authentication						
Host Name	192.16	8.120.7(MySQL5.7)				
Database Type *	My	SQL	~			
	Databa	se type to be added.				
Select Instance *	Add	Database Instance				
		Instance	Database Type	Version	User	Authentication Time
	$\checkmark$	127.0.0.1:3306	MySQL	5.7	root	2021-12-20 16:49:32

If the configurations of database have changed, select the database instance you wish to edit, click on **Authenticate** to edit.

# MySQL Database Backup

### Create Database Backup Job

To create database backup jobs, please go to **Database Backup** > **Backup** page. There are 4 steps to create a database backup job.

#### Step 1: Backup Source

First select backup source from left column, then select MySQL database instance you wish to backup, in the right column will show which instance you selected, click on next to step 2.

R New Database Backup Job				
1 Backup Source	2 Backup Destination	3 Backup S	Strategies 4 Review 8	& Confirm
Database Backup Agents	MySQL ~	Search by database name	Selected Database	
Search by keyword  192.168.123.15(localhost.localdomain)	☐ ☐ 192.168.123.15(localhost.localdom ☐ @ ☐ 127.0.0.1:3306 ☐ @ information_schema ☐ mysql ☐ @ performance_schema ☐ @ sys	ain)	127 0.0.1:3306/127.0.0.1:3306	
		Next ③		

#### Step 2: Backup Destination

A backup destination (backup storage) should be associated with this backup job.

1 v Backup Source	2 Backup Destination 3 Backup Stra	ategies	4 Review & Confirm
Target Node	localhost.localdomain(192.168.123.18)	~	
Target Storage	CIFS_NEIL_PC(CIFS Share, Capacity :331.51GB, Free Space:315.67GB)	~	
	<ol> <li>Select a backup node to run this backup job.</li> <li>Select a storage on the node to save the backup data.</li> </ol>		

In the **Target Node** dropdown list, you can select a backup node on which you want the backup data to be processed and stored.

In the Target Storage dropdown list, the storages belongs to the selected backup node can be selected.

#### Step 3: Backup Strategies

In the General Strategy it including Schedule, Speed Controller, Data Storage Policy and Retention Policy.

Database Backup Job		
1 v Backup Source	2 v Backup Destination 3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
🖉 General Strategy	← Transmission Strategy	
Ø	Schedule	+
	Mode Backup as scheduled V	
	Schedule * Full Backup Differential Backup 10g Backup 3	
0	Speed Controller	+
•	Data Storage Policy Data Deduplication: OFF, Data Compression: ON	+
R	Retention Policy Restore Point(s), 30	+

In the Schedule field, you can configure the time schedule of the backup job, you can configure the job as a **Backup as Scheduled** job or a **Once-off Backup** job.

For a once-off backup job, the job will only run for once, and only full backup will be performed. You only have to appoint a time of when to start the backup job, in the Time Schedule field.

🖸 Schedule									
Mode	Once-off Bac	:kup						~	
Start Time *							×		0
			N	over	nber	202	1	>	
Speed Control	ler	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	
		31	1	2	3	4	5	6	
💾 Data Storage F	olicy Data (	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	on: ON
		14	15	16	17	18	19	20	
Retention Polic	Y Restore P	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	
		28	29	30	1	2	3	4	
		5	6	7	8	9	10	11	

For backup job type, you can schedule Full Backup, Incremental Backup and Log Backup.

Here we take these three Backup as an Example. Please set the backup mode and backup schedule as per your actual demands, then please click on **Next** to continue.

Mode	Backup as scheduled 🗸	
Schedule *	✓ Full Backup ✓ Differential Backup ✓ Log Backup ()	
	✔ Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)	+
	Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)	+
	<ul> <li>Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)</li> </ul>	+

Speed Controller is optional. It can be used to limit the transmission speed during database backup if needed. The speed controller policy can be configured as either As Scheduled or Permanent. An As Scheduled policy can be configured to limit the backup speed on Daily, Weekly and Monthly basis.

Schedule     Daily     Every week     Monday     Tuesday     Wednesday       Weekly     Thursday     Friday     Saturday       Monthly     Start Time     23:00:00     O	Policy	As Scheduled 🗸 🕤	
	Schedule	Weekly	Thursday 🗸 Friday Saturday
			23:00:00
Repeat End 23:30:00 O		Repeat End	23:30:00
	lax Speed	15 ^ ~ MB/s ~ ()	

A Parmanent policy will always limit the backup speed within the specified Max Speed.

Speed Contro	ller		×
Policy	Permanent	۲ ()	
Max Speed	15 ^ ~	MB/s 🗸 🜖	
			Cancel OK

There are 2 options in Data Storage Policy section, Data Deduplication and Data Compression. By enabling these 2 options, the backup data will be deduplicated and compressed before saving into backup storage.

💾 Data Storage Policy Data Deduplicati	on: OFF, Data Compression: ON		_
Data Deduplication	Off	0	
Data Compression	On	0	

For the retention policy of the database backup, there are 2 retention mode, retain the database backups according to **Number of Restore Points** or **Number of Days**.

For the retention mode **Number of Restore Points**, the restore points will be counted by full restore points, including the incremental backups and log backups dependent on this full backup.

For retention mode **Number of Days**, Vinchin Backup Server will save the restore points within the specified number of days.

Retention Policy Restore	Point(s), 30	_
Retention Mode	Number of Rest 🗸 👔	
Restore Points	Number of Restore Points Number of Days	

When the retention policy is triggered, the outdated restore points will be purged to comply with the retention policy.

In the transmission Strategy, you can choose to enable **Encrypted Transmission** for data safety. The backup data will be transferred through LAN by default.

1	✓ Backup Source	2 Sackup Destination	3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
	🔏 General Strategy 🖕 Transr	nission Strategy @E Advanced Strategy		
	Encrypted Transmission	Off <b>1</b>		
	Transfer via	LAN 🗸	0	

#### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above-mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen. A job name can be specified for identification of the database backup job, and by clicking on the Submit button to create the backup job.

### Database Backup Job Operations

Once a database backup job had been created, you will be redirected to the Monitor Center > Jobs page.

<b>b</b> C	Current Jobs "D History Jobs	VM	VM Backup	File Backup	🔒 Database	Backup							
										Search	n by job name	Search	Q Advanced sear
	Job Name		Module		Job Type 💧	Create Time	•	Status	Speed		Progress (	Creator	Operation
_	Database Backup Job2		Database		Backup	2021-11-12 15:58:08		Pending			-	admin	♣ Options ~

The status of the newly created job will usually be **Pending**, when the time condition matches the schedule, it will automatically run. And the status will change to Running, you can also see the transfer speed here within the job list.

Besides the Current Job list, there's a dedicated tab to show database backup jobs. More detailed information of database backup jobs, including database type, database agent info, backup node, next run time and some more detailed information dedicated for database backup will be given.

80	Current Jobs 🤊 H	istory Jobs	🔒 Database Backı	ıp							
								Search by j	ob name	Search Q A	dvanced search
	Job Name 🚽	Job Type 🕴	Database Type 🔅	Agent 🔅	Mount Node	Next Run	Status 🔶	Duration	Speed	Transferred Size 🕴	Operation
÷	Database Backup J ob3	Backup	MySQL	192.168.123.15	Main123.18(192.1 68.123.18)	2021-11-18 23:0 0:00	Pending				신 Options

By clicking on the job name you can check more detailed information on the Job Detail page.

For a scheduled backup job, after running one of the schedules, the status will change to Pending again and then wait for the next run.

For a once-off backup job, after running the job for once, it will be removed from the Current Job list. And you can find it from the History Job list.

### **Database Restore**

There are two methods to recover MySQL database, **Override Original Database** and **Redirect Restore to New Path**.

For **Override Original Database** restore, MySQL database needs to be shutdown. For example:

systemctl stop mysqld

And an empty temporary directory needs to be created and should be granted with mysql user permission for storing cache data during restoration process. For example:

mkdir /data

chown -R mysql:mysql /data

All data in the original data directory (datadir) needs to be cleared before restoration, it's recommended to rename the original data directory and create a new directory with the original data directory name, and it needs to be granted with mysql user permission, for example:

cd /var/lib/ mv mysql mysql.bk mkdir mysql chown -R mysql:mysql mysql Note

1. The above operations should be done by the MySQL database admin.

2. The temporary directory is recommended to be created on the same partition as original data directory.

2. For the datadir, it's configured in the my.cnf file, database admin should perform the above operations according to the actual environment.

For **Redirect Restore to New Path**, a temporary directory and a new data directory need to be created and need to be granted with mysql user permissions, for example:

mkdir /data
chown -R mysql:mysql /data
mkdir /data1
chown -R mysql:mysql /data1
Note

1. Redirect Restore to New Path does not require shutdown MySQL database services.

2. The restored data will be saved in the new data directory, database admin can use the restored data to create new database or modify the my.cnf file to start MySQL database from the new data directory.

To restore databases from database backup restore points, please go to **Database Backup** > **Restore** page. There are 4 steps to restore databases from the database backup restore points.

#### Step 1: Restore Point

In the Restore Point dropdown list, select a backup node which stores the desired restore points.

Select a target database restore point under your database which you want to restore. You can quickly find the target restore point by searching the job name, database name or the date of the restore point. One restore job only can select one restore point.

Restore Point *       All nodes       Selected restore points         Search by database name <ul> <li></li></ul>	1 Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3	Mode	4 Review & Con
	Restore Point *				
			ac	127.0.0.1:3306	
			Nex	¢t⊛	

#### Step 2: Restore Destination

After selecting restore point, select **Target Instance** to restore.

1 v Restore Point	2 Restore Destination 3 Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Target Instance *		
	Notice:	×
	Restore MySQL database requires the following operations to be done by the database administr (DBA):	rator
	1. MySQL database needs to be shutdown.	
	<ol><li>If you choose to override the original database to restore, the target database host should have same configurations as source host, including operating system version, database version, datab username and password.</li></ol>	
	3. Override original database restore will clean up data file in data directory, if needed you could n copy of the data file at first.	make a
	<ol> <li>Create a new temporary path to store cache data during restoration, it's better the temporary p the same disk partition as the data directory.</li> </ol>	with is on
	5. If restore MySQL transaction log is required, binary logging must be enabled.	

#### Step 3: Restore Strategy

For **Override Original Database** restore, fill in the temporary directory path.

1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Override Original Database 🗸	0	
Temporary Directory:	/data	0	
Rollback Time	Off		
Speed Controller	Speed Controller	_	
	+Add Policy		

For **Redirect Restore the New Path** restore, fill in the temporary directory path and the new data directory path.

1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3	Mode	4 Review & Co	onfirr
Mode *	Redirect Restore to New Path	~ ( <b>)</b>			
Temporary Directory:	/data	0			
New Path:	/data1	0			
Rollback Time	Off				
Speed Controller	Speed Controller		-		
	+Add Policy				

**Rollback time**: if you had selected log backup restore point, you are able to rollback MySQL database state within the given time range.

1 v Restore Point	2 ✔ Res	tore	Des	tinat	ion				3 Mode	4 Review & Co
Mode *	Override Original I	Datab	ase					~	0	
Temporary Directory:	/data								0	
Rollback Time	On									
Select Rollback Time	2021-11-15 14:26:35 🗶 🛗									
	Reference range of log r 2021-11-15 14:26:35	November 2021					1			
		Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa		
Speed Controller	\varTheta Speed Contro	31	1	2	3	4	5	6	_	
	+Add Policy	7	8	9	10	11	12	13		
		14	15	16	17	18	19	20		
		21	22	23	24	25	26	27		
		28	29	30	1	2	3	4		
		5	6	7	8	-	10			

If you disable rollback time it will by default restore to the latest time point of the backup when it's been taken. Same as database backup, while restoring databases, you can also configure **Speed Controller** to limit the database restore speed accordingly.

#### Step 4: Review&Confirm

After completing the above-mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen.

A New Database Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 ✓ Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Job Name :	Database Restore Job1		
	Specify a customized job name if needed.		
Restore Point			
Selected Restore Point(s):	MySQL database restore 192.168.123.15/127.0.0.1:3306(2021-11-15 14:26:36)		
Restore Destination			
Restore Path:	192.168.123.15(localhost.localdomain)		
estore Strategy			
Mode:	Redirect Restore to New Path Temporary Directory: ./data New Path: ./data Rollback Time: ON, The log rollback time is : 2021-11-15 14:26:36		
Speed Controller:	NA		
	© Васк	Submit ④	

Once the job has been created, you'll be redirected to the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page.

As the database restore job is by default to be executed right after the creation of the job, so it will run automatically, when you see it in the current job list, it should be in running status already, and once completed, the job will be automatically deleted from the current job list.

After this you can browse the restored job from History Jobs. Your restored data will be found in the path you configured during creating the restore job.

#### Note

If you use log backup point to override original database, MySQL service will auto restart, no need to manually start MySQL service.

## Database Backup Data

The database backup data can be managed from **Database Backup > Backup Data** page.

Database Backup Data			
Restore Points		⊘ Restore Point List	
🖻 Delete		Notice:	×
All nodes v Searc	ch by keyword	1. Expand the tree menu of the left to browse the database restore points.	
		<ol><li>Each restore point has its timestamp of backup creation.</li></ol>	
🖃 🗆 🗐 MySQL		3. You can delete a single restore point by selecting it and click on Delete.	
😑 🗆 📰 Database Backup Job3		4. You can batch delete restore points by selecting the restore points and clicking on Delete.	
⊡ □ 🛢 127.0.0.1:3306(192.168	3.123.15)		
	9 (Full Backup)		
	:09 (Incremental B		
	17 (Log Backup)		

If you want to delete a restore point or multiple restore points, you can first select target restore point(s) from the left tree, and click on the **Delete** button. The incremental backup and log backup cannot be deleted individually, they will be deleted along with the dependent full backup.

E Restore Points		© Restore Point List Database Backup Job3127.0.0.1:3306(192.168.123.15)									
i Delete		No.	Time Point	Туре 🕴	Data Size	Written Si	ze Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star	
All nodes         Search by keyword           □ @ [] MySQL         □ @ [] Database Backup Job3           □ @ [] 127.0.0.1:3306(192.168.123.15)         □ @ [] 2021-11-18 17:11:09 (Full Backup)           □ @ [] 2021-11-18 17:11:09 (Full Backup)         □ @ [] 2021-11-18 17:12:09 (Incremental B           □ @ [] 0 atabase Backup Job2(Job has been deleted )         □ [] Database Backup Job1		1	2021-11-18 17:12:17	Log Backu p	201B	201B	CIFS Share1 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		신 Options	~	
		2	2021-11-18 17:12:09	Incrementa I Backup	2.16MB	201.41KB	CIFS Share1 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		오 Options	~	
		3	2021-11-18 17:11:09	Full Backu p	24.86MB	1.04MB	CIFS Share1 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		오 Options	~ <mark>`</mark> }	

When deleting backup data, you need to provide your login password to confirm the deletion, once deleted the data will be unrecoverable.

Please enter your login password to confirm the deletion.		×
	Cancel	ОК

For the restore point list in the right column, you need to select a database in the left tree menu to view all restore points of the selected database. Information like backup type, data size, written backup size and storage will be given.

You can add remarks to the restore points, and click  $\stackrel{f}{\sim}$  with full restore point to keep the full backup and its dependent incremental and log backups to not be deleted by retention policy.

Restore Points		⊚ Re	store Point List	atabase Bacl	kup Job312	27.0.0.1:3306	6(192.168.123.1	5)		
in Delete		No.	Time Point	Туре 🔅	Data Size	Written Si	ze Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star
All nodes       Search by keyword         □ 𝔅 □       MySQL         □ 𝔅 □       Database Backup Job3         □ 𝔅 □       127.0.0.1:3306(192.168.123.15)         □ 𝔅 □       2021-11-18 17:11:09 (Full Backup)         □ □ 𝔅 □       2021-11-18 17:11:09 (Incremental B         □ □ □       SQL Server         □ □ □       SQL Server         □ □ □       Database Backup Job2         □ □ □       Sortele		1	2021-11-18 17:12:17	Log Backu p	201B	201B	CIFS Share1 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		한 Options	~
		2	2021-11-18 17:12:09	Incrementa I Backup	2.16MB	201.41KB	CIFS Share1 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		소 Options	~
		3	2021-11-18 17:11:09	Full Backu p	24.86MB	1.04MB	CIFS Share1 (Main123.18 (192.168.12 3.18))		신 Options	× <mark>ל</mark>

# Oracle Database Backup and Restore

# Install Database Backup Agent

## Windows

The Supported Windows system versions including Windows Server 2008/2012/2016/2019.

To download database backup plugin, please go to the login screen of Vinchin Backup Server web console, click on **Download Backup Plugin** to go to the backup plugin download page.

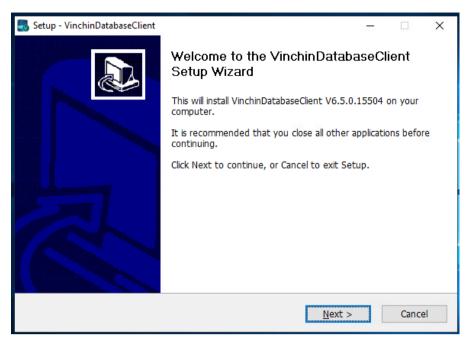
V	inchin
Dowr	nload Backup Plugin
Туре	Database Backup Agent 🛛 🗸
OS	Windows 🗸

In **Type** dropdown list, select **Database Backup Agent**, in **OS** dropdown list, select **Windows**, and then click on **Download** button to download.

The downloaded database backup plugin should be an executable exe file.

Name	Date modified	Туре	Size	
🌉 vinchin-database-agent.windows.6.5.0.15504	11/22/2021 8:56 AM	Application	3,663 KB	

To install the backup plugin, please right click on it and select **Run as administrator** to install the backup plugin with administrator permissions.



Click on **Install** button to start the installation.

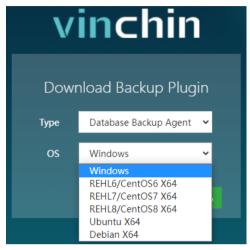
🌄 Setup - VinchinDatabaseClient —		×
Ready to Install Setup is now ready to begin installing VinchinDatabaseClient on your computer.	(	
Click Install to continue with the installation, or click Back if you want to review change any settings.	or	
Destination location: C:\Program Files\VinchinDatabaseClient	1	^
Start Menu folder: VinchinDatabaseClient		
<	>	~
< <u>B</u> ack Instal	Car	ncel

After the installation, check whether if 'database\_backup\_service' and 'database\_transfer\_service' are running, if yes, it means the agent is successfully installed.

Name	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
database_backup_service database_transfer_service			Automatic Automatic	Local Syste Local Syste	

## Linux

The supported Linux distributions and versions including RHEL 6 to 8, CentOS 6 to 8 and Oracle Linux 6 to 8. Please go to login screen and click on **Download backup plugin** to go to the database backup plugin download page.



Select the corresponding Linux distribution and version then click on the Download button to download the database backup plugin.

The downloaded backup plugin should be a .tar.gz package. Please upload the downloaded file to the Linux system, to upload from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, please enter the Linux system command line interface and use the below command to decompress the package.

tar -zxvf vinchin-database-backup-agent-xxx.tar.gz

Where 'xxx' should be the actual file name of the database backup plugin package.

Enter the database backup plugin package folder.

cd vinchin-database-backup-agent-xxx

To install the backup plugin, run below command.

./db\_backup\_agent\_install

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, database backup and restore will no longer work on this Linux host).

./db\_backup\_agent\_uninstall

Use below command to check Vinchin database backup services status

ps -aux | grep database | grep -v 'grep'

Three process services should be running as shown below.

[oracle@local home]\$ ps -aux   grep database	grep -v 'grep'								
Warning: bad syntax, perhaps a bogus '-'? See /usr/share/doc/procps-3.2.8/FAQ									
root 8500 0.0 0.0 106240 1340 pts/1	S Nov16 0:05 /bin/bash /opt/vinchin/database/db_backup_watch_dog.sh								
root 8507 0.0 0.1 266216 6700 ?	Ssl Nov16 0:01 /opt/vinchin/database/database_backup_service -b								
root 8514 0.0 0.1 145096 5064 ?	Ssl Nov16 0:00 /opt/vinchin/database/database_transfer_service -b								
[oracle@local home]\$									

# Register Database Backup Agent

After the database backup agent installation, please open Vinchin Backup Server web console and go to **Database Backup** > **Backup Agent** page. Click on **Add Agent** button to start adding database backup agent.

╋ Add Agent		×
IP Address *	192.168.123.21	~
Name *	Enter IP address of the database host. Oracle	~
Management	Type a name for the agent host.	
Port *	Port used for agent management.	
Port	Port used for backup data transmission.	
Agent Local Port	20400 Port for agent local use.	
	[	Cancel OK

In the IP Address field, enter the IP address of the database server which you wish to backup, database agent must be installed on the server.

In the Name field, you can optionally enter a name for identification. For the Management Port, Transmission Port and Agent Local port, please use default settings and do not change them.

When done, click on **OK**, then in the **Agent List** it will show the database backup agent you just added.

Ag	ent List								
Ad	d Agent 🛭 💼 Delete A	lgent							
	Host name 🕴	Name	IP Address 🔅	Operating System	Add Time 🚽	Database Type	Licensed module	Status 🔅	Operation
	local	Oracle	192.168.123.2 1	Linux(Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server rele ase 6.8 (Santiago))	2021-12-20 17:01:4 3	Unidentified		Online	<sup>6</sup> Options √
						Page < 1	> of 1   View 10	✓ record	ds   Total 1 recor

Once a database agent had been added, you need to license the database agent and authenticate the database instance before performing database backups.

Click on **Options** > License in the popup dialog, click on License checkbox to license the database backup agent.

♣ Agent Licen	se ×
	Database License: Total 10, Authorized 0, Unauthorized 10
Host name:	local
License	Please license this database agent before backup.
	Сапсеі ОК

Click on **Options** > **Authentication** to authenticate the database instance for backup. In database type dropdown list, select Oracle. It will automatically show database Instance of the database server. Select the Instance you wish to backup and click on **Authenticate** button.

C Database Instance Authenticatio	n				
Host Name	192.168.123.21(local)				
Database Type *	Oracle 🗸				
	Database type to be added.				
Select Instance *	Add Database Instance				
	Instance	Database Type	Version	User	Authentication Time
	✓ orcl	Oracle			
		Pa	ge < 1 > of 1	View 10 🗸	records   Total 1 record(s)
	Back Authentica	le			

In the popup dialog, specify the **Installation User** of Oracle database, if the database server is Windows server, then use the default installation user, only fill in the database username and password.

If the database server is Linux, you need to change the **Installation User** only when the Linux user is not oracle.

유 Instance Auther	tication	×
Installation User *	oracle	
	The oracle installation user name.	
Username *	system	
	Database instance user name.	
Password *		
RAC Cluster	Password for database instance login.	
	Cancel	Save

The user to be used to backup Oracle database must have dba and sysdba permissions. You can login to oracle database use below commands to check user permissions.

Check if GRANTED\_ROLE = DBA by using command:

select \* from dba\_role\_privs where grantee='username';

Check if SYSDBA = TRUE by using command:

select \* from v\$pwfile\_users where username='username';

It's recommended to grant sysdba permission to the system user, then use system user to backup Oracle database. For **RAC Cluster**, database backup agent needs to be installed on each of the cluster nodes, then add all nodes (backup agents) to Vinchin backup server.

To enable RAC Cluster, only need to do it on one of the nodes with Instance Authentication. By turning the RAC Cluster option on, and in the Select Node field, select all the other nodes of the RAC cluster.

& Instance Authe	ntication	×
Installation User *	oracle	
	The oracle installation user name.	
Username *	system	
	Database instance user name.	
Password *		
	Password for database instance login.	
RAC Cluster	On <b>()</b>	
Select Node	192.168.93.139(rac1)	
	Cancel	Save

Then click on save, and then the database instance will be successfully authenticated.

Note

1. If database server is Linux, the database backup agent needs to use 3 service ports: 20200, 20300 and 20400. On the database server firewall, these 3 ports need to be opened for Vinchin backup server.

2. To add RAC Cluster, database backup agent needs to be installed on all the cluster nodes, and all nodes (agents) need to be added to Vinchin.

3. Choose one Oracle database agent to do Instance Authentication for the RAC cluster.

4. To back up the Oracle RAC cluster environment, run the show all command on the RMAN command line to check whether the control file snapshot is set to the shared storage.

5. Only one backup job needs to be created for one of the RAC cluster node.

6. If one or some of the RAC cluster node fail, backup will be performed on other node, there's no need to modify the backup job under such situation.

7. Archivelog mode needs to be enabled with the database instance before taking backups.

# Oracle Database Backup

## Create Database Backup Job

To create database backup jobs, please go to **Database Backup** > **Backup** page. There are 4 steps to create a database backup job.

#### Step 1: Backup Source

First you need to select a target host from the left column, then select Oracle database instance you wish to backup, in the right column will show the instance you select. Click on next to step 2.

Rew Database Backup Job				
1 Backup Source	2 Backup Destination	3 Backup	Strategies 4	Review & Confirm
Database Backup Agents	Oracle ~	Search by database name	Selected Data	abase
Search by keyword	E I 192.168.123.21(local) E G ord SYSAUX E SYSAUX E UNDOTBS1 E TEMP USERS		orcl/orcl	
		Next ()		

### Step 2: Backup Destination

A backup destination (backup storage) should be associated with this backup job.

1 ✓ Backup Source	2 Backup Destination 3	Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
Target Node	localhost.localdomain(192.168.123.18)	~	
Target Storage	CIFS_NEIL_PC(CIFS Share, Capacity :331.51GB, Free Space:315.67GB)	~	
	<ol> <li>Select a backup node to run this backup job.</li> <li>Select a storage on the node to save the backup data.</li> </ol>		

In the **Target Node** dropdown list, you can select a backup node on which you want the backup data to be processed and stored.

In the Target Storage dropdown list, the storages belong to the selected backup node can be selected.

## Step 3: Backup Strategies

In the General Strategy it including Schedule, Speed Controller, Data Storage Policy and Retention Policy.

	_	
🖉 General S	Strategy 🖕 Transmission Strategy 💿 Advanced Strategy	
	10 Schedule	+
	Mode Backup as scheduled 🗸	
	Schedule * Full Backup Incremental Backup Differential Backup	
	Archive Log Backup ()	
	Speed Controller	+
	Data Storage Policy Data Deduplication: OFF, Data Compression: ON	+
	Retention Policy Restore Point(s), 30	+

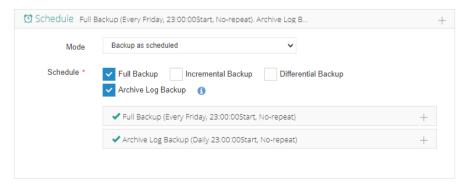
In the Schedule field, you can configure the time schedule of the backup job, you can configure the job as a **Backup as Scheduled** job or a **Once-off Backup** job.

For a once-off backup job, the job will only run for once, and only full backup will be performed. You only have to appoint a time of when to start the backup job, in the Start Time field.

🖸 Schedule										
Mode	Once-off Bac	:kup						~		
Start Time *							×		0	
			N	over	nber	202	1	>		
Speed Control	ler	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa		
		31	1	2	3	4	5	6		
💾 Data Storage F	olicy Data (	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	on: ON	
		14	15	16	17	18	19	20		
Retention Policy Restore P		21	22	23	24	25	26	27		
		28	29	30	1	2	3	4		
		5	6	7	8	9	10	11		

For backup job type, you can schedule Full Backup, Incremental Backup, Differential Backup and Archive Log Backup.

For Oracle database must have **Full Backup** and **Archive Log Backup**. Please set the backup mode and backup schedule as per your actual demands, then please click on **Next** to continue.



Speed Controller is optional. It can be used to limit the transmission speed during database backup if needed. The speed controller policy can be configured as either As Scheduled or Permanent. An As Scheduled policy can be configured to limit the backup speed on Daily, Weekly and Monthly basis.

Policy	As Scheduled	× ()	
Schedule	Daily Weekly Monthly	Every week	Monday     Tuesday     Wednesday       Thursday     Image: Comparison of the second
	Monany	Start Time Repeat End	23:00:00 O 23:30:00 O
ax Speed	15 ^ ~	MB/s 🗸 🚯	

A Parmanent policy will always limit the backup speed within the specified Max Speed.

Permanent	× ()		
15 ^ ~	MB/s 🗸 🚺		
		Cancel	ОК
			-

There are 2 options in Data Storage Policy section, Data Deduplication and Data Compression. By enabling these 2 options, the backup data will be deduplicated and compressed before saving into backup storage.

🖪 Data Storage Policy D	ata Deduplication: OFF, [	Data Compression: ON	J	_
Deduplication	Off	0		
Compressed Transfer	On	0		

For the retention policy of the database backup, there are 2 retention mode, retain the database backups according to **Number of Restore Points** or **Number of Days**.

For the retention mode **Number of Restore Points**, the restore points will be counted by full restore points, including the differential backups and log backups dependent on this full backup.

For retention mode **Number of Days**, Vinchin Backup Server will save the restore points within the specified number of days.

Retention Policy Restor	Point(s), 30	_
Retention Mode	Number of Rest 🗸 👔	
Restore Points	Number of Restore Points Number of Days	

When the retention policy is triggered, the outdated restore points will be purged to comply with the retention policy.

In the transmission Strategy, you can choose to enable **Encrypted Transmission** for data safety. The backup data will be transferred through LAN by default.

1	✓ Backup Source	2  Sackup Destination	3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
	🖉 General Strategy 🗧 Transi	mission Strategy @E Advanced Strategy		
	Encrypted Transmission	Off		
	Transfer via	LAN 🗸	9	

Advanced Strategy allows you to configure Backup Archivelog of last (days), Delete Archivelog, Oracle Compression and Multithreaded transmission.

1 v Backup Source	2 v Backup Destination	3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
🔏 General Strategy 🛛 🖨 Transmis	sion Strategy @E Advanced Strategy		
Backup Archivelog of last (days)	2	0	
Delete Archivelog	On (1)		
Oracle Compression	Off (1)		
Multithread	1 ^ *	0	

**Backup archivelog of last(days)**: The default value of the recent archivinglog days is associated with the frequency of archiving log backup set in the schedule policy. e.g. if Archive Log Backup set to Daily, default is 2 days. If Archive Log backup set to every week, default is 8 days. If Archive Log Backup set to Monthly, default is 31.

**Delete Archivelog**: enabled delete archivelog can delete backed up archivelog file from database server, reclaim archive space from the database server. If disabled this option, database admin needs manually delete archivelog files.

**Oracle Compression**: provide by Oracle to reduce data transfer, data backup time and save backup storage, disabled by default.

**Multithread**: backup data will be transferred over multiple channels to improve the backup speed. The default value is 1, and the maximum value is 6.

Note

If Delete Archivelog is disabled, DBA must manually delete archivelog files regularly, otherwise, production database crash may occur once space is fulfilling with archive log files. It is recommended to enable this function.

#### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen.

● Backup Source       ● Backup Destination       ● Backup Strategies       ● Review & Confirm <ul> <li></li></ul>	A New Database Backup Job	
Backup Source       Specify a customized job name if needed.         Backup Source       Agent:       192.168.123.21(ncd)         Backup Source:       192.168.123.21(ncd)         Backup Destination       Main123.18(192.168.123.18)         Target Node:       Main123.18(192.168.123.18)         Backup Destination       CIFS Share(Capacity:331.51GB, Free         Backup Strategies       Backup as scheduled         Schedule:       Full Backup (Every Friday, 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)         Differential Backup (Daly 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)       Differential Backup (200.00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Beduplication: OFF         Compression: OFF Transfer via: LAN       Retention Policy:         Retention Policy:       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Transfer via: LAN         Retention Policy:       Restore Point(s), 30         Speed Controlle:       NA	1 v Backup Source	2 -> Backup Destination 3 -> Backup Strategies 4 Review & Confirm
Backup Source       Agent:       192.168.123.21(local)         Backup Source:       192.168.123.21/orcl Oracle Backup         Backup Destination       Main123.18(192.168.123.18)         Target Node:       Main123.18(192.168.123.16)         Backup Strategies       CIFS Share1(CIFS Share, Capacity:331.51GB, Free Space.312.08GB)         Backup Strategies       United Storage         Data Storage Policy:       Backup as scheduled         Data Storage Policy:       Deduplication: OFF Compressed Transfer ON         Tarsmission Strategies       Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN         Retention Policy:       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategies       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog of last (days): 2 Delete Archivelog. ON         Speed Controlle:       NA	Job Name :	Database Backup Job2
Agent:       192.168.123.21/orcl         Deckup Dource:       192.168.123.21/orcl         Backup Destination       Backup Torget Node:         Main 123.18(192.168.123.18)       Target Storage:         CIFS Share1(CIFS Share, Capacity :331.51GB, Free Space: 312.08GB)       Space: 312.08GB)         Backup Strategies       Mode:         Backup Contrategies       Backup as scheduled         Schedule:       Full Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)         Differential Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)       Archive Log Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Deduplication: OFF         Compressed Transfer: ON       Transmission Strategy:         Retention Policy:       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog: ON         Speed Controller:       NA	Backup Source	Specify a customized job name if needed.
Backup Destination       Main 123.18(192.168.123.18)         Target Node:       CIFS Share (Capacity : 331.51GB, Free Space: 312.08GB)         Backup Strategies       Backup as scheduled         Schedule:       Full Backup (Every Friday, 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Oliferential Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Oliferential Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Deduplication : OFF Compressed Transfer: ON         Retention Policy:       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog: ON         Speed Controlle:       N/A		192.168.123.21(local)
Target Node:       Main 123 18(192 168 123 18)         Target Storage:       CIFS Share (CIFS Share, Capacity :331.51GB, Free Space:312.08GB)         Backup Strategies       Mode:       Backup as scheduled         Schedule:       Full Backup (Every Friday, 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Differential Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Dedujication : OFF Compressed Transfer ON         Transmission Strategy:       Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN         Retention Policy:       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog: ON         Speed Controller:       N/A	Backup Source :	
Target Storage       CIFS Share 1(CIFS Share, Capacity :331.51GB, Free Space:312.08GB)         Backup Strategies       Mode:       Backup as scheduled         Schedule:       Full Backup (Every Friday, 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Differential Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23.00.00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Deduplication : OFF Compressed Transfer: ON         Transmission Strategy:       Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN         Retention Policy :       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog ON         Speed Controller:       N/A	Backup Destination	
Backup Strategies         Mode:       Backup as scheduled         Schedule:       Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)         Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)       Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)         Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)       Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Deduplication : OFF Compressed Transfer: ON         Transmission Strategy:       Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN         Retention Policy :       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog: ON         Speed Controller:       N/A	Target Node:	Main123.18(192.168.123.18)
Mode:       Backup as scheduled         Schedule:       Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat) Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Deduplication : OFF Compressed Transfer: ON         Transmission Strategy:       Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN         Retention Policy:       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog: ON         Speed Controller:       N/A	Target Storage:	
Schedule:       Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)         Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)         Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)         Data Storage Policy:       Deduplication : OFF         Compressed Transfer: ON         Transmission Strategy:       Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN         Retention Policy :       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup         Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog: ON         Speed Controller:       N/A	Backup Strategies	
Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat) Data Storage Policy: Deduplication : OFF Compressed Transfer: ON Transmission Strategy: Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN Retention Policy : Restore Point(s), 30 Advanced Strategy: Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog: ON Speed Controller: N/A	Mode:	Backup as scheduled
Compressed Transfer: ON         Transmission Strategy:       Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN         Retention Policy :       Restore Point(s), 30         Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog; ON         Speed Controller:       N/A	Schedule:	Differential Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)
Retention Policy :     Restore Point(s), 30       Advanced Strategy:     Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog: ON       Speed Controller:     N/A	Data Storage Policy:	
Advanced Strategy:       Oracle Compression: OFF Multithread : 1 Backup Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog: ON         Speed Controller:       N/A	Transmission Strategy:	Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN
Archivelog of last (days) : 2 Delete Archivelog: ON Speed Controller: N/A	Retention Policy :	Restore Point(s), 30
	Advanced Strategy:	
	Speed Controller:	N/A
		⊕ Back Submit ⊝

A job name can be specified for identification of the database backup jobs, and by clicking on the Submit button to confirm the creation of the backup job.

## Database Backup Job Operations

Once a database backup job had been created, you will be redirected to the Monitor Center > Jobs page.

<b>B</b>	Current Jobs 🧐 History Jo	bs 🛯 🗟 Database Back	kup								
						Se	arch by job na	me	Search	QA	dvanced search
	Job Name	Module	Job Type 🕴	Create Time 🚽	Status		Speed	Progress	Creat	or	Operation
+	Database Backup Job2	Database	Backup	2021-11-18 14:46:53	Pending				admin		Options      ✓

The status of the newly created job will usually be **Pending**, when the time condition matches the schedule, it will automatically run. And the status will change to Running, you can also see the transfer speed here within the job list.

Besides the Current Job list, there's a dedicated tab to show database backup jobs. More detailed information of database backup jobs, including database type, database agent info, backup node, next run time and some more detailed information dedicated for database backup will be given.

26 (	urrent Jobs	J History Jo	bs 🔒 Database	Васкир							
								Search by job	name	Search C	Advanced search
	Job Name 🔻	Job Type 🗦	Database Type 🗦	Agent	Mount Node 🔶	Next Run	Status	Duration	Speed 🔶	Transferred S	ize 🗧 Operation
+	Database Bac kup Job1	Backup	Oracle	192.168.9 3.40	Main123.18(19 2.168.123.18)	2021-11-18 23:00:00	Running	00:00:02			선 Options v

By clicking on the job name you can check more detailed information on the Job Detail page.

For a scheduled backup job, after running one of the schedules, the status will change to Pending again and then wait for the next run.

For a once-off backup job, after running the job for once, it will be removed from the Current Job list. And you can find it from the History Job list.

## **Database Restore**

Before starting to restore Oracle database, there are some configurations need DBA to check.

Target recovery database server needs database backup agent installed, and if it's Linux system, the service ports: 20200, 20300 and 20400 needs to be open to Vinchin backup server.

Target Oracle database instance needs to be shutdown, and static listener registration needs to be configured in listener.ora file.

Archivelog mode needs to be enabled with the target Oracle database server. You can check status by login to sqlplus and using below command.

archivelog list;

Check if Automatic archival status is Enabled, if not please configure this by DBA.

Check whether the database instance can be connected by using below command. In standalone environment.

rman target=username/password@instancename

In RAC cluster, use below command.

rman target=username/password@publicIP:1521/instancename

If connection fails, the restore job will failure, please contact DBA to fix it.

If **Override Original Database** restore to another database server, it requires the target database server configurations should be the same as the source database server, including operating system, database version, installation path and instance name. Please be careful to use override original database function.

If **Restore to New Path**, the database path will be automatically changed to the new path specified during the restore process. After restoration, DBA can just start the database services directly from the new path.

Warning:

Restore to New Path does not work with Oracle RAC, because the database path will only change on the RAC node which the restore job is associated to, other nodes will not be changed. If you use Restore to New Path with Oracle RAC, it will cause Oracle RAC exception!

To restore databases from database backup restore points, please go to **Database Backup** > **Restore** page. There are 4 steps to restore databases from the database backup restore points.

#### Step 1: Restore Point

In the Restore Point dropdown list, select a backup node which stores the desired restore points.

Select a target database restore point under your database which you want to restore. You can quickly find the

target restore point by searching the job name, database name or the date of the restore point. One restore job only can select one restore point.

1 Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3	3 Mode	4 Review & Con	nfirm
Restore Point •	All nodes         Search by database name         □ Borde         □ Database Backup Job         □ ① 2021-11-19 11:17:08 (Full Backup)         □ ① 2021-11-19 11:17:08 (Full Backup)         □ ① 2021-11-19 15:50:09 (Differential Backup)         □ ② 2021-11-19 15:50:09 (Differential Backup)			ed restore points 9 (Differential Backup)	
		Next (	<b>∂</b>		

#### **Step 2: Restore Destination**

After selecting restore point, select **Target Instance** which you wish to restore.

1 v Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3 Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Target Instance *	☑ 1         192.168.123.21(local)           □ 1         192.168.93.39(rac1)           □ 1         192.168.93.40(rac2)		

### Step 3: Restore Strategy

**Mode**: Override Original Database applies to restore the data to the production database server. Override the data of the original database instance.

1	2 • Restore Destination		3 Mode		4 R	eview & Confirm
Mode •	Override Original Database	~ ()				
Rollback Time	Override Original Database Restore to New Path					
Multithread	1	. 0				
Speed Controller				+		

Restore to New Path applies to restore data to a new directory. The directory needs to be created by the Oracle database installation user, do not use a directory which does not exist.

1 ✓ Restore Point	2 • Restore Destination		3 Mode		4	Review & Confirm
Mode *	Restore to New Path	~	0			
Specify Directory	/u01/data					
Rollback Time	Off 3					
Multithread	1	~ ~	0			
Speed Controller	Speed Controller			+		

**Rollback Time**: if you had selected archive log backup restore point, you are able to rollback Oracle database state within the given time range.

1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Des	tination		3 Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Override Original Database		~	0	
Rollback Time	On 🚯				
Select Rollback Time	2021-11-19 02:56:55		× 🗰		
	Reference range of archive log rollback tim 02:56:55	November	2021		
		Su Mo Tu We	Th Fr Sa		
Multithread	1	31 1 2 3	4 5 6	0	
		7 8 9 10	11 12 13 -		
Speed Controller	Speed Controller	14 15 16 17	18 19 20 -	+	
		21 22 23 24	25 26 27		
		28 29 30 1	2 3 4		
		5 6 7 8	9 10 11		

If you disable rollback time it will by default restore to the latest time point of when the backup has been taken. **Multithread:** backup data will be transferred over multiple channels to improve the restore speed. The default value is 1, and the maximum value is 6.

**Speed Controller**: Same as database backup, while restoring databases, you can also configure speed controller to limit the database restore speed accordingly.

## Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above-mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen.

A New Database Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 ✓ Restore Destination	3 ✓ Mode	4 Review & Confirm
Job Name :	Database Restore Job1		
	Specify a customized job name if needed.		
Restore Point			
Selected Restore Point(s):	Oracle database restore 192.168.123.21/orcl(2021-11-19 15:56:54)		
Restore Destination			
Restore Path:	192.168.123.21(local)		
Restore Strategy			
Mode:	Override Original Database Rollback Time: OFF Multithread : 1		
Speed Controller:	N/A		
	Back	Submit 🕣	

Once the job has been created, you'll be redirected to the Monitor Center > Jobs page.

As the database restore job is by default to be executed right after the creation of the job, so it will run automatically, when you see it in the current job list, it should be in running status already, and once completed, the job will be automatically deleted from the current job list.

After this you can browse the restored job from History Jobs. Your restored data will be found in the path you select.

# Database Backup Data

S Databasa Baakun Data

■ Restore Point	s		Ø Restore Point List	
@ Delete			Notice:	2
All nodes	~	Search by keyword	1. Expand the tree menu of the left to browse the database restore points.	
			<ol><li>Each restore point has its timestamp of backup creation.</li></ol>	
🖃 🗇 📳 Oracle			<ol><li>You can delete a single restore point by selecting it and click on Delete.</li></ol>	
白. 🗋 Databa	se Backup Job (192.168.123.21)		4. You can batch delete restore points by selecting the restore points and clicking on Delete.	
	021-11-19 11:17			

The database backup data can be managed from **Database Backup > Backup Data** page.

If you want to delete a restore point or multiple restore points, you can first select target restore point(s) from the left tree, and click on the **Delete** button. The incremental, differential and log backups cannot be deleted individually, they will be deleted along with the dependent full backup.

≡ Restore Points			© Restore Point List Database Backup Joborcl(192.168.123.21)											
會 Delete			No.	Time Point	Туре	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star			
All nodes		Search by keyword	1	2021-11-19 15:56:54	Archive Log Backup	128MB	41.7MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		소 Options ~				
Cond(192:168:123.21)     Cond(192:168:123.21)     Cond(192:168:123.21)     Cond(192:168:123.21)     Cond(192:169:169)     Cond(192:169:169)     Cond(192:169)     Cond(1			2	2021-11-19 15:50:09	Differential Backup	152MB	43.93MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		실 Options ~	I			
			3	2021-11-19 15:49:49	Incremental Backup	152MB	43.95MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		소 Options ~				
			4	2021-11-19 11:17:08	Full Backup	1.13GB	390.16MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18)		실 Options ~	☆			

When deleting backup data, you need to provide your login password to confirm the deletion, once deleted the data will be unrecoverable.

Please enter your login password to confirm the deletion.		×
	Cancel	ОК

For the restore point list in the right column, you need to select a database in the left tree menu to view all restore points of the selected database. Information like backup type, data size, written backup size and storage will be given.

You can add remarks to the restore points, and click  $\stackrel{f}{\simeq}$  with full restore point to keep the full backup and its dependent incremental and log backups to not be deleted by retention policy.

🛢 Database Backup	Data													
■ Restore Points			© Restore Point List Database Backup Jobord(192.168.123.21)											
會 Delete			No.	Time Point	•	Туре 🝦	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star 🛊		
All nodes		Search by keyword	1	2021-11-19 15:56:54		Archive Log Backup	128MB	41.7MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		한 Options ~			
<ul> <li>         General (192.168.123.21)         <ul> <li></li></ul></li></ul>			2	2021-11-19 15:50:09		Differential Backup	152MB	43.93MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		한 Options ~			
			3	2021-11-19 15:49:49		Incremental Backup	152MB	43.95MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		신 Options ~			
			4	2021-11-19 11:17:08	1	Full Backup	1.13GB	390.16MB	Disk Partition1 123.18 (Main123.18(1 92.168.123.18) )		신 Options ~	☆		

# PostgreSQL Database Backup and Restore

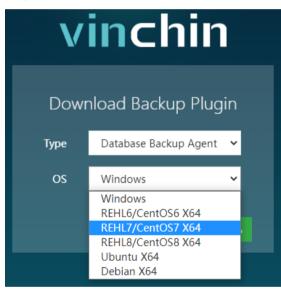
For PostgreSQL database backup, supported database versions are as follows:

- PostgreSQL 12
- PostgreSQL 13
- PostgreSQL 14

The supported PostgreSQL database server operating system including RHEL/CentOS 7 and 8 x64. PostgreSQL running on Windows server is currently not supported.

# Install Database Backup Agent

Please download PostgreSQL database backup agent from Vinchin Backup & Recovery login screen. Select the corresponding Linux distribution and version then click on the Download button to download the database backup plugin.



After downloading, you should get a .tar.gz package. Please upload the downloaded file to the database server for installation, to upload from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with. After uploading, please enter the Linux system command line interface and use the below command to decompress the package.

tar -zxvf vinchin-database-backup-agent-xxx.tar.gz

Where 'xxx' should be the actual file name of the database backup plugin package.

Enter the database backup plugin package folder.

cd vinchin-database-backup-agent-xxx

To install the backup plugin, run below command.

./db\_backup\_agent\_install

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, database backup and restore will no longer work on this database server).

```
./db_backup_agent_uninstall
```

After installing the database backup plugin, please check its services use below command.

ps -aux | grep database | grep -v 'grep'

If you got the below output which has 4 services, bd\_backup\_watch\_dog.sh, database\_backup\_service, database\_backup\_service\_dm\_pg and database\_transfer\_service, this means database backup agent installed successfully, the services are up running and ready for backup and restore.

[ro	ot@postg	re -	~]‡ ps	-au	x   grep	datal	base	grep -v	'grep'		
roo	t 2	731	0.0	0.0	113280	1464	ttyl		05:39	0:00	/bin/bash /opt/vinchin/database/db_backup_watch_dog.sh
roo	t 2	738	0.0	0.2	304648	8108		Ssl	05:39	0:00	/opt/vinchin/database/database_backup_service -b
roo	t 2	745	0.0	0.1	103992	5612		Ssl	05:39	0:00	/opt/vinchin/database/database_backup_service_dm_pg -b
roo	t 2	753	0.0	0.1	106744	5532		Ssl	05:39	0:00	/opt/vinchin/database/database_transfer_service -b

# Register Database Backup Agent

After the installation of database backup agent, please open Vinchin Backup Server web console and go to **Database Backup > Backup Agent** page.

Click on **Add Agent**, enter the IP address of the PostgreSQL database server, and give it a name, leave the port numbers with the default values.

IP Address *	192.168.69.155	~
	Enter IP address of the database host.	
Name *	postgresql13	~
	Type a name for the agent host.	
Management Port1 *	20200	
	Port used for agent management.	
Management Port2 *	20201	
	Port used for agent management.	
Transmission Port	20300	
	Port used for backup data transmission.	
Agent Local Port	20400	
	Port for agent local use.	

After adding the backup agent, please click on **Options** button and select **License** to license it with Vinchin Backup & Recovery database backup license.

ୟ Agent Licen	se ×
	Database License: Total 3, Authorized 0, Unauthorized 3
Host name:	postgre.sql
License	Database License Please license this database agent before backup.
	Cancel OK

After that, click on **Options** again and select **Authentication**. In the Database **Type dropdown** list, please select **PostgreSQL**.

C Database Instance Authentication						
Host Name	192.168.69.155(postgresql13)					
		-				
Database Type *	SQL Server	<i>,</i>				
	SQL Server Oracle					
Select Instance *	MySQL PostgreSQL					
		abase Type	version	User	Authentication Mode	Authentication Time
			No	available data		

The database instances of PostgreSQL will be listed in the **Select Instance** field. Select the database instance and click on **Authenticate** button to get the instance authenticated for backup.

₽ Instance Authe	ntication		×
Database Name	postgres		
	Any database of the postgres instance		
Bin File Path *	/usr/pgsql-13/bin		
	PostgreSQL Binary Path		
Username *	postgres		
	Database instance user name.		
Password *			
	Password for database instance login.		
		Cancel	Save

You need to specify the database bin file path and the database user credentials to get it authenticated. After this you are ready to take backups of the PostgreSQL database.

Host Name 192.168.69.155(postgresql13) Database Type * PostgreSQL ~ Database type to be added. Select Instance * Instance Port Database Type Version User Authentication Time PostgreSQL Data Directory 5432 PostgreSQL 13.5 postgres 2022-05-27.14.11.06 Variib/pgsql/13/data Page 1 > of 1/ View 10 ~ records) Total 1 records)								
Database Type       PostgreSQL       Image: Control of the added         Database type to be added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added         Select Instance       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added         Select Instance       Image: Control of the added         Select Instance       Image: Control of the added         Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added         Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added         Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added         Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added         Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the added       Image: Control of the								
Database Type *     Postgre SQL        Database type to be added.       Select Instance *     Instance Port     Database Type     Version     User     Authentication Time     Postgre SQL Data Directory       6     5432     Postgre SQL     13.5     postgre SQL     2022-05-27 14:11.06     /varilib/psql/13/data								
Database type to be added.       Select Instance*     Instance Port     Database Type     Version     User     Authentication Time     PostgreSQL Data Directory       5432     PostgreSQL     13.5     postgreS     2022-05-27 14.11.06     /var/lib/psql/13/data	Host Name	192.168	.69.155(postgresql13)					
Select Instance         Instance Port         Database Type         Version         User         Authentication Time         PostgreSQL Data Directory           5432         PostgreSQL         13.5         postgres         2022-05-27 14:11:06         /var/lib/pgsql/13/data	Database Type =	Post	greSQL	~				
Instance Port         Database Type         Version         User         Authentication Time         PostgreSQL Data Directory           5432         PostgreSQL         13.5         postgres         2022-05-2714:11.06         /var/lib/psql/13/data		Databas	e type to be added.					
Instance Port         Database Type         Version         User         Authentication Time         Postgre SQL Data Directory           5432         Postgre SQL         3.5         postgres         2022-05-2714:11:06         /variib/gsql/13/data	Select Instance *							
			Instance Port	Database Type	Version	User	Authentication Time	PostgreSQL Data Directory
Page < 1 > of 1   View 10 → records   Total 1 records)			5432	PostgreSQL	13.5	postgres	2022-05-27 14:11:06	/var/lib/pgsql/13/data
						Pag	e < 1 → of 1   View 10	) v records   Total 1 record(s)

Note

DBA must check the below prerequisites before taking PostgreSQL database backups.

1. The database backup agent needs to use 4 service ports: 20200, 20201, 20300 and 20400. On the database server firewall, these 4 ports need to be opened for Vinchin backup server.

2. Archivelog mode needs to be enabled with the database instance before taking backups.

3. The password-based authentication should be "md5" or "scram-sha-256".

# PostgreSQL Database Backup

## Create Database Backup Job

To create database backup jobs, please go to **Database Backup** > **Backup** page. There are 4 steps to create a database backup job.

#### Step 1: Backup Source

First you need to select a target database server from the left column, then select PostgreSQL database instance you wish to backup, in the right column will show the instance you have selected.

A New Database Backup Job				
1 Backup Source	2 Backup Destination	3 Backup Strat	tegies	4 Review & Confirm
Database Backup Agents	PostgreSQL ~	Search by database name	Selected	Database
Search by keyword  192.168.69.155(postgresgl13)	□ 192.168.69.155(postgresql13) □ ④ ⑤ 5432 └		5432/5432	

#### Step 2: Backup Destination

A backup destination (backup storage) should be associated with this backup job.

R New Database Backup Job			
1 v Backup Source	2 Backup Destination 3 Backup St	trategies	4 Review & Confirm
Target Node	vinchin67.srv(192.168.120.18)	~	
Target Storage	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :299.85GB, Free Space:298.91GB)	~	
	<ol> <li>Select a backup node to run this backup job.</li> <li>Select a storage on the node to save the backup data.</li> </ol>		

In the **Target Node** dropdown list, you can select a backup node on which you want the backup data to be processed and stored.

In the Target Storage dropdown list, the storages belong to the selected backup node can be selected.

### Step 3: Backup Strategies

In the General Strategy it including Schedule, Speed Controller, Data Storage Policy and Retention Policy.

➢ New Database Backup Job		
1 v Backup Source	e Backup Destination 3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
🔏 General Strategy	← Transmission Strategy @ Advanced Strategy	
	🖸 Schedule _	
	Mode Backup as scheduled ~	
	Schedule * Full Backup Archive Log Backup 🚯	
	(A) Speed Controller +	
	Data Storage Policy Data Deduplication: OFF, Data Compression: ON +	
	Retention Policy Restore Point(s), 30 +	

In the Schedule field, you can configure the time schedule of the backup job, you can configure the job as a **Backup as Scheduled** job or a **Once-off Backup** job.

For a once-off backup job, the job will only run for once, and only full backup will be performed. You only have to appoint a time of when to start the backup job, in the Start Time field.

🖸 Schedule									-
Mode	Once-off Backup							~	
Start Time *							×		0
				Ma	ay 20	22		>	
Speed Controller		Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	+
		24	25	26	27	28	29	30	1
💾 Data Storage Policy Dat	a Deduplication: OFF, Data Compression: ON	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	+
		8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
Retention Policy Restore	Point(s), 30	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	+
		22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
		29	30	31	1	2	3	4	

If you want to setup a Backup as Scheduled job, you can schedule Full Backup and Archive Log Backup. For PostgreSQL database, it is recommended to schedule weekly full backup with daily archive log backup.

🖸 Schedule Full Backup (Ev	very Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat). Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:0	00:00Start, No-repeat).	-
Mode	Backup as scheduled	~	
Schedule *	✓ Full Backup ✓ Archive Log Backup ()		
	<ul> <li>Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)</li> </ul>		+
	✔ Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)		+

Speed Controller is optional. It can be used to limit the transmission speed during database backup if needed. The speed controller policy can be configured as either As Scheduled or Permanent. An As Scheduled policy can be configured to limit the backup speed on Daily, Weekly and Monthly basis.

(?) Speed Contro	ler	×
Policy	As Scheduled V (3	
Schedule	Daily       Every week       Monday       Tuesday       Wednesday         ✓ Weekly       Thursday       Friday       Saturday         Monthly       Start Time       23:00:00       Ø         Repeat End       23:30:00       Ø	
Max Speed	15 ^ ~ MB/s <b>~</b> ()	
	Cancel	ок

A Parmanent policy will always limit the backup speed within the specified Max Speed.

Speed Contro	ller		×
Policy	Permanent	× ()	
Max Speed	15 ^ ~	MB/s 🗸 🚯	
			Cancel OK

There are 2 options in Data Storage Policy section, Data Deduplication and Data Compression. By enabling these 2 options, the backup data will be deduplicated and compressed before saving into backup storage.

💾 Data Storage Policy D	ata Deduplication: OFF,	Data Compression: ON	_
Deduplication	Off	0	
Compressed Transfer	On	0	

For the retention policy of the database backup, there are 2 retention modes, retain the database backups according to **Number of Restore Points** or **Number of Days**.

For the retention mode **Number of Restore Points**, the restore points will be counted by number of full restore points, including the archive log backups dependent on the corresponding full restore points.

For retention mode **Number of Days**, Vinchin Backup Server will save the restore points within the specified number of days.

Retention Policy Restor	Point(s), 30	_
Retention Mode	Number of Rest 🗸 👔	
Restore Points	Number of Restore Points Number of Days	

When the retention policy is triggered, the outdated restore points will be purged to comply with the retention policy.

In the transmission Strategy, you can choose to enable **Encrypted Transmission** for data safety. The backup data will be transferred through LAN by default.

1 Sackup Source	2 v Backup Destination	3 Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
🖉 General Strategy	⇐ Transmission Strategy		
Encrypted T	ransmission Off		
	Transfer via LAN 🗸	0	

Advanced Strategy allows you to configure archive log deletion and log space monitoring options.

Rew Database B	ackup Job				
1	✓ Backup Source	2 v Backup Destination	3	Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
	🔏 General Strategy 🛛 🖨 Tr	smission Strategy @E Advanced Strategy			
	Delet	vchivelog Delete backed up archive log	~ <b>(</b> )		
	Log	pace Alert On 3			
	1	eshold by Percentage	~		
		You will receive system alerts when storage free space is the given threshold.	elow		
		pace Left 20 ^ Y			

**Delete Archivelog**: there are 3 options **Delete backup up archive log**, **Do not delete** and **Delete all archive log**. It is recommended to use the Delete backed up archive log option to delete the archive log which had been backed up. **Log Space Alert**: if enabled, Vinchin backup server will monitoring on the archive log space usage, when exceeded the specified threshold you will receive alerts on the Vinchin web console.

## Note

If Delete Archivelog has been set to Do not delete, DBA must manually delete archivelog files regularly, otherwise, production database crash may occur once space is fulfilling with archive log files. It is recommended to set Delete Archivelog option to Delete backed up archive log.

### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above-mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen.

Arr New Database Backup Job			
1 v Backup Source	2 - Backup Destination	3 v Backup Strategies	4 Review & Confirm
Job Name :	Database Backup Job1		
Backup Source	Specify a customized job name if needed.		
Agent :	192.168.69.155(postgresg 13)		
Backup Source :	192.168.69.155/5432		
Paders Destination	undefined Backup		
Backup Destination Target Node:	vinchin67.srv(192.168.120.18)		
Target Storage:	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :299.85GB, Free Space:298.01GB)		
Backup Strategies			
Mode:	Backup as scheduled		
Schedule:	Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00Start, No-repeat) Archive Log Backup (Daily 23:00:00Start, No-repeat)		
Data Storage Policy:	Data Deduplication : OFF Data Compression: ON		
Transmission Strategy:	Encrypted Transmission: OFF Transfer via : LAN		
Retention Policy :	Restore Point(s), 30		
Advanced Strategy:	Delete Archivelog: Delete backed up archive log Log Space Alert: ON Threshold by : Percentage Threshold by : 20%		
Speed Controller:	N/A		

A job name can be specified for identification of the database backup jobs, and by clicking on the Submit button to confirm the creation of the backup job.

## **Database Job Operations**

Once a database backup job had been created, you will be redirected to the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page.

Search	by job name	Search Q Advanced search
Progress	Creator	Operation
-	admin	堂 Options ~
	Progress	• •

The status of the newly created job will usually be **Pending**, when the time condition matches the schedule, it will automatically run. And the status will change to Running, you can also see the transfer speed here within the job list.

Besides the Current Job list, there's a dedicated tab to show database backup jobs. More detailed information of database backup jobs, including database type, database agent info, backup node, next run time and some more detailed information dedicated for database backup will be given.

Current Jobs 'D History Jo	bs 🔒 Database Ba	ackup								
								Search by j	ob name Sear	h Q Advanced search
Job Name	🔻 Job Type	Database Type	Agent	Backup Node	Next Run	Status 🕴	Duration	Speed	Transferred Size	Operation
Database Backup Job1	Backup	PostgreSQL	postgresql13(192.168.69.155)	vinchin67.srv(192.168.120.18)	2022-05-27 23:00:00	Pending			-	🖞 Options 🗸

By clicking on the job name you can check more detailed information on the **Job Detail** page.

For a scheduled backup job, after running one of the schedules, the status will change to Pending again and then wait for the next run.

For a once-off backup job, after running the job for once, it will be removed from the **Current Job** list. And you can find it from the **History Job** list.

## **Database Restore**

Vinchin Backup & Recovery supports two recovery mode for PostgreSQL database: **Override Original Database** restore and **Restore to New Path**.

Before starting to restore PostgreSQL database, there are some database configurations need DBA to check. The target recovery database server must have database backup agent installed, and the service ports: 20200, 20201, 20300 and 20400 needs to be opened for Vinchin backup server.

If override original database restore, the target PostgreSQL database instance needs to be shutdown, the path of data directory and archive log directory must be the same as original database server, and the free storage space of the database server must be enough to save the full restore point data size.

If restore to new path, you must specify a custom port number to run the database instance and the port number should not be used by any other services on the database server. And you need to specify new directories for data and the archive log, these 2 directories should be empty and should not be any directory which is being used by any other services on the database server. For the free storage space required, it must be 2 times more than the full restore point data size.

To create a PostgreSQL database restore job, please go to **Database Backup** -> **Restore** page and follow the steps below.

## Step 1: Restore Point

If you select a full restore point, you'll be able to directly restore PostgreSQL database to the state of when the backup was taken. If you select an archive log restore point, you are able to roll back the database state to any time point between the first full backup timepoint and the selected archive log backup time point.

A New Database Restore Job				
1 Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3 F	Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Restore Point *	All nodes	~	Selected restore p	pints
	Search by database name		2022-05-27 17:41:07 (Archive Log Backup)	×
			5432	
	□         □			

## Step 2: Restore Destination

After selecting restore point, select **Target Instance** which you wish to restore.

A New Database Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Target Instance *	☞ 192.168.69.155(postgresq113)		

The target database instance can be the original database server or a new database server.

## Step 3: Restore Strategy

**Mode**: Override Original Database applies to restore the data to the production database server. Override the data of the original database instance.

A New Database Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Override Original Database	<b>ن</b>	
Rollback Time	Off		
Speed Controller	C Speed Controller	+	

Restore to New Path applies to restore data to a new directory. The directory needs to be created by the PostgreSQL database user and has PostgreSQL user permissions.

A New Database Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Restore to New Path	• •	
New Path:	/var/lib/pgsql/13/data01/		
Custom Port:	5433		
	The custom port should not be any port which is already inuse.		
Custom Archive Directory:	/var/lib/pgsql/13/archivedir01 Custom archive directory should not be the same as existing archive directory.		
Rollback Time	оп		
Speed Controller	⇔ Speed Controller	+	

**Rollback Time**: if you had selected archive log backup restore point, you are able to rollback PostgreSQL database state within the given time range.

A New Database Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode *	Override Original Database	~ <b>()</b>	
Rollback Time	On 🚯		
Select Rollback Time	2022-05-27 17:39:40		
Speed Controller		+	

If you disable rollback time it will by default restore to the latest time point of when the backup has been taken. **Speed Controller**: Same as database backup, while restoring databases, you can also configure speed controller to limit the database restore speed accordingly.

## Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above-mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings in one screen.

A New Database Restore Job						
1 v Restore Point	2 v Restore Destination	3 ✓ Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm			
Job Name	Database Restore Job1					
Restore Point	Specify a customized job name if needed.					
Selected Restore Point(s	undefined database restore 192.168.69.155/5432(2022-05-27 17:41:07)					
Restore Destination						
Restore Path	: 192.168.69.155(postgresql13)					
Restore Strategy Mode						
	Rollback Time: ON, The log rollback time is : 2022-05-27 17:39:40					
Speed Controlle	: N/A					
		ⓒ Back Submit ⊕				

Once the job has been created, you'll be redirected to the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page.

As the database restore job is by default to be executed right after the creation of the job, so it will run automatically, when you see it in the current job list, it should be in running status already, and once completed, the job will be automatically deleted from the current job list.

During the database restore process, the full data size of the full backup will be transferred from Vinchin backup server to the database server, and the data will be written in to a temporary directory, after transmission is completed then it will perform restore/roll backup restore operations according to the job configurations.

# Database Backup Data

The database backup data can be managed from **Database Backup > Backup Data** page.

Database Backup Data			
■ Restore Points		o Restore Point List	
Delete All nodes	Search by keyword	Notice: 1. Expand the tree menu of the left to browse the database restore points.	×
All nodes □ □ □ □ PostgreSQL □ □ □ □ Database Backup Job1 □ □ □ □ □ 5432(192.168.69.155)	Search by Reyword	2. Each restore point has its timestamp of backup creation.     3. You can delete a single restore point by selecting it and click on Delete.     4. You can batch delete restore points by selecting the restore points and clicking on Delete.	
È:□ C 2022-05-27 17:38:42 (Full Backup)			

If you want to delete a restore point or multiple restore points, you can first select target restore point(s) from the left tree, and click on the **Delete** button. The archive log backups cannot be deleted individually, they will be deleted along with the dependent full backup.

Restore Points		0 Res	© Restore Point List Database Backup Job15432(192.168.69.155)								
會 Delete		No.	Time Point	•	Туре	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star
All nodes 🗸	Search by keyword	1	2022-05-27 17:41:07		Archive Log Backup	16MB	73.29KB	Local Disk1 (vinchin67.srv(192.1 68.120.18))		✿ Options ∽	
□ □ □ □ Database Backup Job1 □ □ □ □ 5432(192.168.69.155) □ □ □ 0 2022-05-27 17:38:42 (Full Backup)		2	2022-05-27 17:38:42		Full Backup	6.28GB	936.38MB	Local Disk1 (vinchin67.srv(192.1 68.120.18))		실 Options ~	☆

Vinchin Backup & Recovery v6.7 | Admin User Guide

When deleting backup data, you need to provide your login password to confirm the deletion, once deleted the data will be unrecoverable.

Please enter your login password to confirm the deletion.		×
	Cancel	ОК

For the restore point list in the right column, you need to select a database in the left tree menu to view all restore points of the selected database. Information like backup type, data size, written backup size and storage the backup resides in will be given.

No.	Time Point 🔹	Туре 🔶	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Remarks $\phi$	Operation	Star 🕴
1	2022-05-27 17:41:07	Archive Log Backup	16MB	73.29KB	Local Disk1 (vinchin67.srv(192.1 68.120.18))		② Options ∨	
2	2022-05-27 17:38:42	Full Backup	6.28GB	936.38MB	Local Disk1 (vinchin67.srv(192.1 68.120.18))		<ul> <li>         Options ∨     </li> <li>         Remark     </li> </ul>	☆
					Page <	1 > of 1   View 10	🗊 Delete	tal 2 record(s)
Notice: ×								
Once a r	estore point has been starred, it wil	be reserved perma	nently.					

You can add remarks to the full backups and the archive log backups, and click  $\checkmark$  with full restore point to keep the full backup and its dependent archive log backups to not be deleted by retention policy. *Note:* 

1. In the restore point list, users are not allowed to delete an individual archive log restore point, when you click on Options button you are only able to add remarks to an archive log restore point.

2. If it's a full restore point, you are allowed to add remarks to it or to delete it, but deleting a full restore point will also delete the archive log restore point dependent on the full restore point.

# File Backup

# Install File Backup Agent

# Windows

The supported Windows systems including Windows XP, 7, 8 and 10, Windows Server 2003, 2008, 2012, 2016 and 2019.

To install file backup plugin, you can open Vinchin Backup Server web console from the target Windows system directly, on the login screen, click on **Download Backup Plugin** to go to the backup plugin download page.

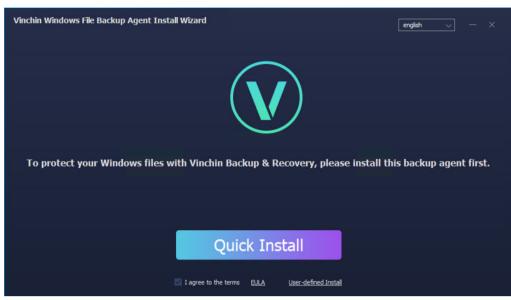
	V	inc	hir	٦	
	Down	load Back	up Plug	g-in	
	Туре	File Backup P	lugin	~	
File	esystem	Windows		~	
		🕞 Back	Downlo	oad 📥	

In the Type dropdown list, please select **File Backup Plugin**. In the **Filesystem** dropdown list, please select Windows. Then click on **Download** button to download.

The downloaded file backup plugin should be an executable exe file.

Name	Date	Туре	Size	Tags
by vdps-agent.windows.6.5.0.14929.exe	12/31/2021 11:56 AM	Application	5,808 KB	

To install the backup plugin, please right click on it and select **Run as administrator** to install the backup plugin with administrator permissions.



Click on **Quick Install** button to start the installation, the installation will take a few seconds. Once installation completed, please find the backup plugin icon from the taskbar and right click on the icon, and then select **Agent Configure**.

🥑 Vinchin Windows File Backup Agent > Configure Port					
Server Address:	192.168.84.100				
Server Port:	22710				
Test Connection	Save Restart				

In the **Server Address** field, please enter the IP address of Vinchin Backup Server. After this you can click on Test Connection button to test if the file backup plugin can communicate with Vinchin Backup Server.

vinchin	
Test connection success	
	ОК

If you get Test connection success, then please click on Save button to save the settings.



Click on OK to restart the file backup plugin services then you have successfully installed and configured the file backup plugin on the Windows system.

## Note

Please keep the file backup plugin running on the Windows system, otherwise file backup or restore will fail.

## Linux

The supported Linux distributions and versions including RHEL 6 to 8, CentOS 6 to 8, Ubuntu 12 to 20, Debian 7 to 10.

Please go to login screen and click on **Download backup plugin** to go to the file backup plugin download page.



Select the corresponding Linux distribution and version then click on the Download button to download the file backup plugin.

The downloaded backup plugin should be a .tar.gz package. Please upload the downloaded file to the Linux system, to upload from Windows desktop, you can use WinSCP or PSCP, or any other methods that you are familiar with.

After uploading, please enter the Linux system command line interface and use the below command to decompress the package.

```
tar -zxvf vinchin-file-backup-agent-xxx.tar.gz
```

Where 'xxx' should be the actual file name of the file backup plugin package.

Enter the file backup plugin package folder.

```
cd vinchin-file-backup-agent-xxx
```

To install the backup plugin, run below command.

./file\_backup\_agent\_install

Use below command to uninstall (once uninstalled, file backup and restore will no longer work on this Linux host).

./file\_backup\_agent\_uninstall

After installing the file backup plugin, please modify the conf file use below command.

vim /etc/backup\_system/rt\_client.conf.xml

Specify Vinchin Backup Server IP address in the row '<server\_ip>0.0.0.0</server\_ip>' and replace the address 0.0.0.0 with the actual IP address of your Vinchin Backup Server. In this example, the server IP is 192.168.84.100.

<client\_key\_name>client.key</client\_key\_name> <log\_dir>/var/log/vinchin/</log\_dir> <log\_num>60</log\_num> <log\_level>debug</log\_level>

</router-client-conf>

When done, save the modifications.

Next, the rt\_client process needs to be terminated, first please find its PID use below command.

ps -aux | grep rt\_client | grep -v "grep" | awk '{print \$2}'

The output should be a number and it's the PID of the rt\_client process.

[root@localhost vinchin-file-backup-agent-6.0.0.10468-FS.RHEL.8-x86\_64]# ps -aux | grep rt\_client | grep -v "grep" | awk '{print \$2}'
21760

In this example, the PID is 21760, please terminate the process using the command below.

kill -9 21760

After terminating the rt\_client process, it will be automatically restarted by the file backup plugin daemon process, and the modification of the server IP should be effective now.

# Register File Backup Agent

After the installation and configuration of the backup plugin on the target host(s), please open Vinchin Backup Server web console and go to **File Backup** > **Backup Agent** page.

🔥 My agent 🛛 🖑 Agent Management							
Delete offline host							
Host name	IP Address	Operating System		Register Time	License Module	Status	
			No available data				

Click on the Agent Management tab to register those hosts to Vinchin Backup Server.

🏟 My agent 🛛 🖑 Agent Manag	jement							
					Search by host	name	Search	Q Advanced search
Host name	IP Address	Operating System \$\$	Register Time	License Module	User 🕴	Status		Operation 🕴
ubuntu	192.168.84.112	Ubuntu 19.04				Online unreg	istered	
DESKTOP-9R3J972	192.168.84.200	Windows 10 Enterprise				Online unreg	istered	🖕 Options 🗸

For both Windows and Linux hosts, click on **Options** and then select **Register** to register them to Vinchin Backup Server.

<b>∛</b> Registration	×
	File license: Total 20, Authorized 0, Unauthorized 20
Agent host name *	ubuntu-file-backup
	Type a name for the agent host
Assign to user *	admin 🗸
	Assign the agent host to other user
Add license	✓ È File License
	You have to license the agent module before backup
	Cancel OK

In the popup dialog, you can customize the agent host name, assign the host to specific Vinchin Backup Server user, and ensure the File License checkbox is selected and then click on OK to register this host. Once registered, the host status will change to Online registered status, now you can backup files of the register host.

My agent	inagement							
						Search by	host name Sea	rch Q Advanced search
lost name	IP Address	Operating System	em 🔶	Register Time	License Module	User	Status	Operation
buntu-file-backup	192.168.84.112	Ubuntu 19.04		2020-10-10 14:28:01		admin	Online registered	🖕 Options 🗸
Vindows10-file-backup	192.168.84.200	Windows 10 Enter	rprise	2020-10-10 14:28:16		admin	Online registered	🖞 Options 🗸
My agent      N Agent Ma     Delete offline host     Host name		Address	Operating System	Regi	ister Time	÷	License Module	Status
Windows10-file-back	up 19	2.168.84.200	Windows 10 Enterprise	2020	-10-10 14:28:16	1	•	Online

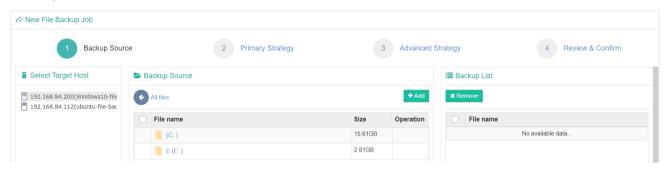
# File Backup

## Create File Backup Job

To create file backup jobs, please go to File Backup > Backup page. There are 4 steps to create a file backup job.

### Step 1: Backup Source

First you need to select a target host from the **Select Target Host** column for this backup job. Each file backup job can only have one host selected.



After selecting the target host, please add the files or folders you want to back up from the Backup Source column. The files/folders could be added by clicking on the Add button corresponding to each file/folder, or you can use the checkbox to select the desired files/folders then use the Add button on the top right of the Backup Source column. The selected files/folders will be listed in the Backup List column.

🍃 Ba	Backup Source					i≣ Backup List			
All files > E: + Add					* Remove				
	File name	Size	Operation				File name		
	🣜 cifs-share		+ Add				emo-filebk		
~	emo-filebk		+ Add				🣜 vinchin		
	ddbcmgr_qocbto		+ Add						
	le share		+ Add						
~	📜 vinchin		+ Add						

After selecting the files/folders, please click on Next to continue.

## Note

If you have already selected a parent folder, then the files or subfolders will not be able to be selected, and it's also unnecessary to select files/folders inside the parent folder.

## Step 2: Primary Strategy

For the backup mode, you could choose between **Backup as scheduled** and **Once-off Backup**, the principle of these backup modes are similar with VM backup.

1        ✓ Backup Source          2       Primary Strategy          3       Advanced Strategy          4       Review & Confirm	A New File Backup Job			
	1	2 Primary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode * Barkin as scheduled	Please set up primary strategy for th	is job. Server Time: 2020-10-10 14:58:06		
Note Decky a scheduled	Mode *	Backup as scheduled ~		
Schedule * 🗸 Full Backup 🗸 Incremental Backup Differential Backup 🚯	Schedule *	Full Backup Incremental Backup Differential Backup	0	
✓ Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat) +		✓ Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat)	+	
Incremental Backup (Every Day 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat)		<ul> <li>Incremental Backup (Every Day 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat)</li> </ul>	+	

Vinchin Backup & Recovery v6.7 | Admin User Guide

Please set the backup mode and backup schedule as per your actual demands, when done please click on **Next** to continue.

### Step 3: Advanced Strategy

Advanced strategy allows you to select the backup storage for file backup, setup the retention policy and the transmission strategy. These settings are also similar with VM backup.

ANew File Back	up Job			
1	✓ Backup Source	2 → Primary Strategy 3	Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Please set up ad	vanced strategy for this job.			
	Ø Backup Destination		-	
	Target Node	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	~	
	Target Storage	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :1023.5GB, Free Space:1017.06GB)	~	
	📋 Retention Policy		+	
	Retention Mode *	Number of Restore Points 🗸		
	Restore Points *	30 ^ ~		
	$\rightleftharpoons$ Transmission Strategy		+	
	Encrypted Transmission *	On		

If you have chosen once-off backup, then there's no need to configure the retention policy, as there will only be one restore point for this file backup job.

When done the advanced strategy settings, please click on **Next** to continue.

### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above mentioned settings, you are able to review and confirm the file backup job settings in one screen.

A New File Backup Job	
1  ✓ Backup Source	2 • Primary Strategy 3 • Advanced Strategy 4 Review & Confirm
Please review and confirm your co	nfigurations.
Job Name :	File backup Windows10
De las German	Default job name could be modified.
Backup Source	
Source Host:	192.168.84.200(Windows10-file-backup)(192.168.84.200)
Backup List.	E:/demo-filebk/ E:/vinchin/
Primary Strategy	
Mode :	Backup as scheduled
Schedule :	Full Backup (Every Friday, 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat) Incremental Backup (Every Day 23:00:00 Start, Non-repeat)
Advanced Strategy	
Backup Destination :	Target Node: backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100) Target Storage: Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :1023.5GB, Free Space:1017.06GB)
Retention Policy :	30 restore point(s)
Transmission Strategy:	Encrypted Transmission: ON

You can give this job a customized name then click on **Submit** to finish creating this file backup job.

### File Backup Job Operations

Once a file backup job had been created, you will be redirected to the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page.

Current Jobs	History Jobs	VM Backup	File Backup									
								Search by	job name	Search	C	Advanced sear
Job Name		Module	Јор Дор ф	Create Time	•	Status	\$	Speed 🔶	Progress 🕴	Creator		Operation
E File backup j	ab1	File Backup	Backup	2021-12-31 12:13:14		Pending	-	-		admin		실 Options ~

The newly created file backup job will be in pending status, the operations which can be done to the file backup job is similar with the VM backup jobs, you can start, stop, edit or delete the job from the current job list.

# **File Restore**

To restore files from file backup restore points, please go to **File Backup** > **Restore** page. There are 4 steps to restore files from the file backup restore points.

### Step 1: Restore Point

First you need to select a target host and a desired restore point from the Select Restore Point column.

A New File Restore Job				
1 Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3 Restore	Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
O Select Restore Point	Restore Source		I≣ Restore List	
□ I92.168.84.200(Windows10-file-backup)	All files >	+ Add	× Remove	
2020-10-10 16:11:49 (Full Backup) □. 📑 192.168.84.112(ubuntu-file-backup)	File name	Size Operation	File na	me
File backup Ubuntu19	E:/demo-filebk/	- + Add	No a	available data
	E:/vinchin/	- + Add		

Then select the desired files/folders from the Restore Source column and add them to the Restore List column.

Restore Source					i≣ Restore List		
♦ All files > + Add			¥ Remove				
	File name	Size	Operation			File name	
~	E:/demo-filebk/		+ Add		<b>V</b>	E:/demo-filebk/	
	E:/vinchin/		+ Add				

When done selecting files/folders, click on Next button to continue.

### Step 2: Restore Destination

This step, you need to specify the destination for the selected files/folders to be restored to.

A New File Restore Job				
1 ✓ Restore Point	2	Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Restore Destination *	Original Host	~		
Restore Path *	Original Path	~		

Vinchin Backup & Recovery v6.7 | Admin User Guide

The default settings are to restore the files/folders to the original host and the original path. If so, please click on **Next** to continue.

If you want to restore the files/folders to another host or a new path, please select the desired host or the desired path then continue.

A New File Restore Job				
1 v Restore Point	2	Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Restore Destination *	New Host	~		
Select Host *	🐨 🗏 ubuntu-file-backup			
Restore Path *	New Path	~		
Select Path *	<ul> <li>(/)</li> <li>() opt</li> <li>() boot</li> <li>() bin64</li> <li>() bin</li> <li>() bi</li></ul>			

#### Note

The files/folders can be only restored to the hosts that have been registered to Vinchin Backup Server.

### Step 3: Restore Strategy

The restore mode of files/folders can only be **Restore now**, you can choose to enable **Encrypted Transmission** for data safety.

A New File Restore Job			
1 v Restore Point	2 <ul> <li>Restore Destination</li> </ul>	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Set up restore strategies for the res	tore job		
Mode *	Restore now 🗸		
Advanced Strategy *	Transmission Strategy		
	Encrypted Transmission On		

Click on **Next** button to continue.

### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After finishing the above settings, you are able to review and confirm all settings here. Click Submit to confirm creating this job.

A New File Restore Job	A New File Restore Job							
1 v Restore Point	2 Restore Destination	3 ✔ Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm					
Please review and confirm your configurations.								
Job Name :	File restore job1							
Restore Source	Default job name could be modified.							
Source Host:	Windows10-file-backup(192.168.84.200)							
Source Backup Job:	File backup Windows10							
Restore Point :	2020-10-10 16:11:49 (Full Backup)							
Restore List:	E:/demo-filebk/							
Restore Destination								
Restore Destination :	Windows10-file-backup(192.168.84.200)							
Restore Path:	Original Path							
Restore Strategy								
Mode:	Restore now							
Advanced Strategy :	Transmission Strategy: Encrypted Transmission "ON"							

Once the job has been created, you'll be redirected to the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page.

As the file restore job is by default to be executed right after the creation of the job, so it will run automatically, when you see it in the current job list, it should be in running status already, and once completed, the job will be automatically deleted from the current job list.

After this you can browse the restored files/folders from the selected host and the selected path.

# File Backup Data

The file backup data can be managed from **File Backup > Backup Data** page.

Backup Data				
⊘ Restore Point	Backup File List Time Point: 2020-10-10	16:11:49 Storage: [backupserver.vinchin(1	92.168.84.100)Loca	I Disk1]
	← All files >			
All nodes 🗸	File name	Size	Туре	Last Modify
□	E:/demo-filebk/		Folder	2020-09-16 17:41:21
□ □ 2020-10-10 16:11:49 (Full Backup)	E:/vinchin/		Folder	2020-09-14 17:00:39
E File backup Ubuntu19 □ 10 2020-10-10 16:18:03 (Full Backup)				

By selecting a host and a file backup job, and then a backup restore point, you are able to browse the backup data of the restore point.

The file backup restore points are similar as the VM backup restore points, you can delete the restore points here and can also mark the restore points to reserve the marked restore points permanently.

# Backup Copy

Backup copy is a feature which can be used to make duplicate versions of your backup data to a secondary storage or location. The copied data is usually of the same version, size and type of your original backup data, and can be used to restore the backup data from any accidental deletion and corruption.

With Vinchin Backup & Recovery, you can copy your backup data to an onsite copy storage or to an offsite copy storage (offsite copy storage is a Vinchin Backup Server installed on remote site).

The onsite backup copy data can be used to restore VMs directly if you have lost both the production data and backup data.

If you had configured offsite backup copy, even if you have lost all data on primary site, the VMs can be restored on remote site to bring back the production VMs of virtual platform on the remote site.

Or after the primary site had been rebuilt, the offsite copy data can be restored back to the primary site Vinchin Backup Server for restoring production VMs and data on primary site.

In conclusion, you can achieve offsite DR (Disaster Recovery) by using offsite copy feature of Vinchin Backup & Recovery which is consistent with 3-2-1 Rule: three copies of your data, on two different storage media, one being off-site.

### Note

- 1. To create backup copy jobs, a backup copy storage needs to be added, for more details of adding backup copy storages please refer to <u>Add Storages</u>.
- 2. To run a backup copy job, a backup job should be completed at first place, no matter it's a VM backup, file backup or database backup job.

# Backup Copy

### Create Backup Copy Job

To create a backup copy job, please go to **Backup Copy** > **Copy** page, then follow the below steps to create the backup copy job.

### Step 1: Copy Source

To select the backup copy source, first please select the corresponding **Source Type** from the dropdown list, by VM Backup, by File Backup, or by Database Backup.

🖪 New Copy Job			
1 Copy Source	2 Primary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Source Type *	VM Backup ~		
Copy Source *	VM Backup	~	
	File Backup	Copy So	urce
	Database Backup		

Next, select the backup node on which the backup data is stored, then you can select the backup data per Backup Job, Virtual Infrastructure (VM Backup only) or Restore Points (VM Backup only).

If you select Backup Job, backup jobs will be listed, by expanding the backup job you can select the copy source as per the VMs included in the backup job.

If you select Virtual Infrastructure, the virtual infrastructures will be listed and you should select corresponding VMs to copy the backup data of the selected VMs.

If the backup job has been deleted or it's a once-off backup job, you can filter the backup data by selecting restore points.

You can select the copy source either way as per your convenience.

New Copy Job					
1 Copy Source	2 Primary Strategy	3	Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm	
Select VM(s) *	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)				
Backup Job   Search by keywords			Selected VM(s)		
	⊡ 🗷 🗐 VMware vSphere Backup Test └ 🖉 💭 centosminimal-84.111		centosminimal-84.111	×	

Once the copy source is selected, please click on Next button to continue.

#### Note

If the backup copy job mode is copy as scheduled, then the first time running this backup copy job, all the backup data (restore points) will be copied to the backup copy storage, the next time running this job, only the new backup data will be copied. This will keep the backup copy data identical with the backup data, but stored in different storages (or locations).

### Step 2: Primary Strategy

For Primary Strategy, you can set the backup copy mode, options are Copy as scheduled and Once-off copy. Copy as scheduled is suitable for the regularly scheduled backup jobs.

🕅 New Copy Job								
1	✓ Copy Source	2	Primary Strategy		3 Adva	nced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm	
		Server Time: 2020-10-20 12:02:20						
	Mode *	Copy as scheduled		~				
	Schedule *	Every Day 23:00:00 Start, Nor	n-repeat			_		
		Oaily	Start Time	23:00:00	0			
		Weekly	Repeat	OFF	0			
		Monthly						

You can set the copy schedule as per the backup job schedule. But the schedules of backup copy job should not be more frequently than the schedules of backup job.

If you wish the backup copy to run regularly as per the backup job runs, please set **Copy as Scheduled**, otherwise set **Once-off Copy** to run the copy job for only once.

As for the schedule of the copy job, it is recommended to run the copy job right after the backup job finishes. For example, the backup job runs at 11 PM each day, and it takes approximately 2 hours to complete the backup job, so you can set the copy job to start 3 or 4 hours later than the backup job.

After done the mode settings, click on the Next button to continue.

### Step3: Advanced Strategy

Copy Destination

Backup copy can be stored in the On-site Storage or Off-site Storage. An on-site backup copy storage is a storage which had been added to local Vinchin Backup Server or local Vinchin Backup Node. An off-site backup copy storage is a remote site Vinchin Backup Server deployed in another location.

Please select the corresponding storage destination as per your actual deployment and requirements, here we take off-site storage as an example.

🕞 New Copy Job			
1 v Copy Source	2 v Primary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
	smission Strategy 💼 Retention Policy (?) Spe	ed Controller	
Destination	Off-site Storage	~	
Off-site Backup Server	Off-site Storage1(192.168.120.12)	~	
Off-site Storage	NFS Share1(NFS Share, Capacity :492.03GB	, Free Space:466.! 🗸	

In the Destination field, Off-site Storage should be selected.

In the Off-site Backup Server field, select the target remote backup server.

Once the remote backup server had been selected, the backup copy storage added on the remote backup server will be loaded automatically, and if there're multiple backup copy storages you can select one from the dropdown list.

Transmission Strategy

Transmission strategy including Encrypted Transmission and Compressed Transfer.

🖪 New Copy Jo	bb					
1	✓ Copy Source	2 🗸	Primary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm	
	Opy Destination		Retention Policy	Speed Controller		
	Encrypted Transmis	sion On	0			
	Compressed Tran	sfer On	0			

**Encrypted Transmission**: The data transmitted from backup source to backup copy storage will be encrypted to ensure the safety of the data transmission.

**Compressed Transfer**: Enable it to compress the backup data during transmission. The backup data will be decompressed when it arrives the backup copy storage.

Retention Policy

Backup copy retention policy is similar with the backup retention policy, it is used to reserve backup copy data stored on the backup copy storage.

🕅 New Copy Job				
	✓ Copy Source	2 v Primary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
		n Strategy	Speed Controller	
	Retention Mode * Nu	nber of Restore 🗸 👔		
	Restore Points * 30	~ ~		

There's only **Number of Restore Points** retention mode for backup copy jobs, Vinchin Backup Server will save the specified number of restore points (for each VM, database and file backups included in the copy job), the older

restore points will be deleted or merged (restore point merge is only applicable for VM restore points) to comply with the retention policy.

Speed Controller

The speed controller settings are optional, only if the backup copy jobs will bring network or I/O overload to your production environment, you need to configure the speed controller accordingly.

🖪 New Copy Jot	)					
1	✓ Copy Source	2 v Primary Strategy	3	Advanced Strategy	4	Review & Confirm
	Opy Destination		<ul> <li>Speed Controller</li> </ul>			
	+Add Policy					
	Limit as scheduled (I	Daily 7:00:00Start, 18:30:00End), Max Speed:50MB/s		×		

### Step4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings.

🕅 New Copy Job		
1	✓ Copy Source	2 • Primary Strategy 3 • Advanced Strategy 4 Review & Confirm
	Job Name :	Copy Job Test3
Copy Source		Default job name could be modified.
	Copy Source:	192.168.64.29/vinchin-Datacenter/VSAN-Cluster/centosminimal-84.111
Primary Strategy		
	Mode:	Copy as scheduled
	Schedule :	Every Day 23.00.00 Start, Non-repeat
Advanced Strategy		
	Copy Destination:	Off-site Storage: copy-storage(Local Directory, Capacity :39.25GB, Free Space:22.05GB)
	Transmission Strategy:	Encrypted Transmission: ON Compressed Transfer: ON
	Retention Policy :	30 restore point(s)

You can optionally customize a job name and then click on Submit button to confirm the creation of this backup copy job.

### **Copy Job Operations**

Once a backup copy job had been created, you will be redirected to the Monitor Center > Jobs page.

<b>B</b> (	Current Jobs	History Jobs	VM Backup	File Backup	🔒 Databa	ise Backup	ා Backup Copy/Archi	ive						
											Search	by job name	Search	Q Advanced search
	Job Name	,	Job Type	Target storage		Target Node		Next Run	Status 🝦	Duratio	n	Speed	Progress 🔅	Operation
+	Copy Job1		DB Backup Copy	Off-site Storage1		localhost.localdo	main(192.168.121.81)	2021-11-26 23:00:00	Pending			-	-	亞 Options ∽
										Page	1	> of 1   V	iew 10 🗸	records   Total 1 record

The job status will be pending, and it should be automatically executed according to the scheduled time. You are also able to manually run the job by clicking on **Options** and select **Start Job**. Or if you want to stop the job, you can click on **Options** and select **Stop**.

After the backup copy job is completed, the backup copy data will be stored in the target backup copy storage. And if it's a once-off copy job, the job will be automatically deleted once completed, if it's a scheduled backup copy job, the job status will change to pending again and wait for the next run.

# **Copy Restore**

If the production data and backup data are all lost on your primary site, you can use the backup copy data on offsite backup copy storage (off-site Vinchin Backup Server) to restore the VMs/Database/Files on primary site. But the backup copy data stored on the off-site backup copy storage cannot be used to restore VMs/Database/Files directly to primary site, it should be restored to an on-site storage first, then from the VM Backup > Restore, Database Backup > Restore and File Backup > Restore page you can create restore jobs to restore the VMs/Database/Files.

To create a backup copy restore job, please go to **Backup Copy** > **Copy Restore** page, then follow the steps below to create a copy restore job.

#### Step 1: Restore Source

Select an off-site backup copy storage, and select the **Source Type** which you wish to restore, and then select the restore point(s).

New Copy Restore Job				
1 Restore Source	2 Restore Destination	3	Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Source Type *	VM Backup ~			
Restore Source ()	VM Backup	Show VM(s) ~	Copy Source	
	File Backup			
	Database Backup			
	📖 🗆 💽 test			

#### Click on Next to continue.

#### Note

As the backup copy data stored on the on-site backup copy storage can be used to restore VMs/Database/Files directly, so you don't have to restore the on-site backup copy data.

### **Step 2: Restore Destination**

Select an on-site storage where you want to save the restored backup copy data.

New Copy Restore Job			
1 v Restore Source	2 Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Target Node	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)		~
Target Storage	PartitionBackup(Partition, Capacity :1023.5GB, Free Space:100	19.78GB)	~

### Step 3: Restore Strategy

Restore strategy including Encrypted Transmission and Compressed Transfer.

🚯 New Copy Restore Job			
1 v Restore Source	2 • Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Advanced Strategy *	Transmission Strategy Speed Controller		
	Encrypted Transmission On	0	
	Compressed Transfer On	0	

**Encrypted Transmission**: The data transmitted from off-site backup copy storage to on-site storage will be encrypted to ensure the safety of the data transmission.

**Compressed Transfer**: Enable it to compress the copy data during transmission. The copy data will be decompressed when it arrives the on-site storage.

**Speed Controller:** It is optional, only if the restore jobs will bring network or I/O overload to your production environment, you need to configure the speed controller accordingly

### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings.

3 New Copy Restore Job								
1 v Restore Source	2 • Restore Destination 3 • Restore Strategy 4 Review & Confirm							
Job Na	ie : Copy Retsore Job Test1							
	Default job name could be modified.							
Restore Source								
Restore Sou	C6: 192.168.64.29/vinchin-Datacenter/VSAN-Cluster/centosminimal-84.111(VMware vSphere)							
Restore Destination								
Restore Destina	on: Target Node: backupserver vinchin(192.168.84.100) Target Storage: PartitionBackup(Partition, Capacity :1023.5GB, Free Space:1009.77GB)							
Restore Strategy								
Transmission Strat	gy: Encrypted Transmission: ON Compressed Transfer: ON							

You can optionally customize a job name and then click on Submit button to confirm the creation of this copy restore job.

After a new copy restore job has been created, you will be redirected to the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, and you will immediately see the copy restore job run automatically.

<b>6</b> 2 (	Current Jobs 3 History Jobs	🕎 VM Backup	File Backup	🗟 Database Backup 🏻 🖻	Backup Copy/Archive					
								Search by job nan	ie Search	h Q Advanced search
	Job Name	∲ Mo	odule	Job Type	Create Time	Status	Speed	Progress	Creator	Operation
÷	Copy Restore Job2	Co	ру	VM Copy Restore	2021-11-23 10:11:07	Running	37.33MB/s	31.95%	admin	신 Options ~

Once the copy restore job is completed, the job will be automatically deleted from the current job list.

Now you can go to **VM Backup** > **Restore** page and create a VM restore job with the restored backup copy data. Or if you restored offsite database backup copy or file backup copy, please go to **Database Backup** > **Restore** or **File Backup** > **Restore** page to create restore jobs accordingly.

Note

You can restore the backed up VMs on remote site virtual platform using the backup copy data transferred from the primary site to the remote site backup copy storage (off-site Vinchin Backup Server).

# Copy Data

### Copy Data for VM Backup

All backup copy data can be managed from the **Backup Copy** > **Copy Data** page. No matter the data storage is in the on-site storage or off-site storage.

Copy Job List		© Restore Point List	
i Delete		Notice	×
VM Backup	~	<ol> <li>Unfold the copy job list on the left.</li> <li>Find the target VM(s) or the target database(s) and corresponding restore points.</li> </ol>	
All Storages 🗸 Sea	arch by keyword	3 You can delete single restore point from [Options]-[Delete]. 4 You can delete the restore points in batches by clicking [Delete] on the top left.	
⊡·□ 🗟 On-site Storage ☆. 🕞 Copy Restore Job2(Job ha			

The Default source type from Copy Data page is VM Backup.

By unfolding the copy storages and the copy jobs, you are able to view all the copy data. And by selecting corresponding restore points, copy job or the copy storage, you are able to delete the selected copy data. *Note* 

#### Please be careful to delete the copy data because the deletion CAN NOT be rolled back any more.

By clicking on a virtual machine, you'll be able to see all the copy restore points of the virtual machine.

Copy Data										
🕆 Copy Job List		o Restore Point List								
會 Delete		No.	Time Point 💡	Туре 🔅	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Remarks 🔅	Operation	Star 🔶
VM Backup All Storages 🗸	✓ Search by keyworc	1	2021-11-22 20: 02:13	Incrementa I Backup	17MB	5.02MB	Off-site Stor age1 (192.1 68.121.15)			
- C 😂 Off-site Storage		2	2021-11-22 16: 42:37	Full Backu p	1.73GB	926.49MB	Off-site Stor age1 (192.1 68.121.15)		☆ Options ∨	
☐ ☐ ☐ J_centos7_10(VMware vSphere)     ☐ ☐ ② 2021-11-22 16:42:37(Full Backup)     ☐ ③ ② 2021-11-22 20:02:13(Incremental Ba     ☐ ◎ On-site Storage     ☐ ○ Ooy Restore Job2(Job has been deleted )		Page < 1 > of 1  View 10 v records   Total 2 record(s Once a restore point is starred, it will be reserved permanently. Offsite copy restore point needs to be starred on the offsite Vinchin server.								

By clicking on **Options**, you will be able to remark or delete the restore point.

And by clicking on the  $\hat{r}$  icon, you are able to mark a restore point, the marked restore point(s) will be kept permanently, and even the retention policy will not delete the marked restore point(s). If the marked restore point is an incremental backup restore point, the retention policy will only cause Vinchin Backup Server merge the last full backup of this incremental backup and the other incremental backups between them to a new full backup restore point, and this merged restore point will be kept permanently. For Hyper-V virtual platforms, only full backup restore point can be marked. For other virtual platforms, you can mark full backup, incremental backup and differential backup restore point.

### Copy Data for Database Backup

The copy data for database backup can be managed from the **Backup Copy** > **Copy Data** page. No matter the data is storage in the on-site storage or off-site storage.

The Default source type from Copy Data page is VM Backup, please select the Database Backup from the dropdown list.

Scopy Data		
Copy Job List	© Restore Point List	
e Delete	Notice	×
Database Backup 🗸	1. Unfold the copy job list on the left.	
VM Backup	2.Find the target VM(s) or the target database(s) and corresponding restore points.	
File Backup	3. You can delete single restore point from [Options]-[Delete].	
Database Backup	4. You can delete the restore points in batches by clicking [Delete] on the top left.	
🕞 🗆 🗟 On-site Storage		
📺 🗔 🧮 Copy Restore Job1(Job has been deleted )		
📄 🗆 🗟 Off-site Storage		
📺 🗆 📰 Copy Job1		

By unfolding the copy storages and the copy jobs, you are able to view all the copy data. And by selecting corresponding restore points, you are able to delete the selected copy data with the **Delete** button on the top left.

E Copy Data									
th Copy Job List	Ø Res	store Point List Copy R	estore Job1(Jo	b has been dele	eted )127.0.0.1:3	306(MySQL)(192.168.123.15)			
Database Backup		Once a restore point is started, it will be reserved permanently. Offsite copy restore point needs to be started on the offsite Vinchin server.						×	
All Storages	No.	Time Point	Туре	Data Size	Written Size	Storage	Remarks	Operation	Star 💠
On-alte Storage     On-alte Storage		2021-11-22 11:43:50	Log Backup	402B	402B	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.121.81))		한 Options ~	
		2021-11-22 11:43:28	Full Backup	24.86MB	1.04MB	Local Disk1 (localhost.localdomain(192.168.121.81))		♦ Options ~	☆
						Page < 1	> of 1   View 10	✓ records   Total 2	2 record(s)

By selecting the copy data from on-site storage, you are able to view the detailed database information of the restore points, remark and star it. And the database information of copy data from off-site storage can be deleted and remarked only.

### Copy Data for File Backup

The copy data for file backup can be managed from the **Backup Copy** > **Copy Data** page. No matter the data is storage in the on-site storage or off-site storage.

The Default source type from Copy Data page is VM Backup, please select the File Backup from the dropdown list.

Scopy Data		
	o Restore Point List	
Delete	Notice	×
File Backup 🗸	. 1. Unfold the copy job list on the left.	
VM Backup	<ol><li>Find the target VM(s) or the target database(s) and corresponding restore points.</li></ol>	
File Backup	3. You can delete single restore point from [Options]-[Delete].	
Database Backup	4. You can delete the restore points in batches by clicking [Delete] on the top left.	
🕞 🗟 Off-site Storage		
庄 🔚 Copy Job4		
🖻 🗟 On-site Storage		
E Copy Job5		

By unfolding the copy storages and the copy jobs, you are able to view all the copy data. And by selecting corresponding restore points, you are able to delete the selected copy data with the **Delete** button on the top left.

Copy Job List		Restore Point List Time Point: 2021-11-22	11:05:50 Storage: [localho	ost.localdomain(192.	168.121.81)Local Disk2]		
會 Delete		♦ All files >					
File Backup	~	Filename	Size	Туре	Modified time		
All Storages 🗸	Search by keyword	D:/app/Administrator/checkpoints/	-	Folder	2021-10-22 14:30:08		
	23:00:00 (Incremental Backup)						

By selecting the copy data from on-site storage, you are able to view the detailed file information of the restore points. And the file information of copy data from off-site storage is not visible.

# **Backup Archive**

Here are the preconditions for a Backup Archive job to be completed successfully:

- 1. A backup archive storage had been added, for more details please refer to Add Storages.
- 2. To run a backup archive job, a VM backup job should be completed at first place.
- 3. Backup Archive is currently not supported with Microsoft Hyper-V.

## Archive

### **Create Archive Job**

To create a backup archive job, please go to **Backup Archive** > **Archive** page, then follow the below steps to create the backup archive job.

### **Step 1: Archive Source**

To select the backup archive source, first please select the backup node on which the backup data is stored, then you can select the backup data per Backup Job, Virtual Infrastructure or Restore Points.

Rew Archive Job							
1 Archive Source	2 Primary Strategy	3	Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm			
Select VM(s) *	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	~					
	Backup Job v		Select	ted VM(s)			
	Backup Job						
	Virtual Infrastructure						
	Restore Points						

If you select Backup Job, existing backup jobs will be listed, by expanding the backup job you can select the archive source as per the VMs included in the backup job.

If you select Virtual Infrastructure, the virtual infrastructures will be listed and you should select corresponding VMs to archive the backup data of the selected VMs.

If the backup job has been deleted or it's a once-off backup job, you can filter the backup data by selecting restore points.

You can select the archive source either way as per your convenience.

A New Archive Job					
1 Archive Source	2 Primary Strategy	3	Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm	
Select VM(s) *	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	~			
	Backup Job ~ Search by keywords		Selected VM(s)		
	□· 🐨 🚍 VMware vSphere Backup Test		centosminimal-84.111	E	

Once the archive source is selected, please click on Next button to continue.

### Step 2: Primary Strategy

For Primary Strategy, you can set the backup archive mode, options are Archive as scheduled and Once-off archive. Archive as scheduled is suitable for the regularly scheduled backup jobs.

Archive Job				
1 ✓ Archive Source	2	Primary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Mode * Schedule *	Server Time: 2020-10-21 11:13:28 Archive as scheduled	-repeat	• —	
	Daily Weekly Monthly	Weekly Start Time	Every Week        Monday     Tuesday       Wednesday     Thursday       Friday     Saturday       0:30:00     O	

You can set the archive schedule on daily, weekly or monthly basis. Each time of the backup archive job will archive the latest backup restore point to the backup archive storage (native/cloud backup archive storage). Once-off archive can be used to archive the backup data for only once, when the archive source is selected with restore points, the backup archive mode will be once-off archive by default. And you can only set an individual running time point for the backup archive job.

➢ New Archive Job							
1 v Archive Source	2 Primary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm				
Server Time: 2020	-10-21 11:23:42						
Start Time *	× 🛍						

After done the primary strategy settings, click on the **Next** button to continue.

### Note

The backup archive job will archive the latest restore point, even if the backup job you selected which has multiple restore points, when the archive job run for the first time the latest restore point will be archived.

If the latest restore point is an incremental backup or differential backup, Vinchin Backup Server will merge this restore point with other dependent restore point(s) to a new full backup restore point and archive to the backup archive storage.

Each of the further archive jobs will always archive a latest full backup restore point to the backup archive storage.

### Step 3: Advanced Strategy

### Archive Destination

Backup archive can be stored in the On-site archive storage or cloud archive storage. An On-site backup archive storage is a storage which had been added to Vinchin Backup Server or Vinchin Backup Node locally. A cloud backup archive storage can be AWS S3, Ceph S3, MS Azure Blob, Alibaba, Wasabi cloud storage, etc.

Please select the corresponding storage destination as per your actual deployment and requirements, here we take Ceph S3 object storage as an example.

R New Archive	Job			
1	✓ Archive Source	2	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
	Destination Cloud Object Storage		~	
	Cloud Object Storage Ceph_S3(Cloud Object Storage)		~	

In the Destination field, Cloud Object Storage should be selected.

In the Cloud Object Storage field, the cloud storages added to Vinchin Backup Server will be available for selecting.

### Transmission Strategy

Transmission strategy including Encrypted Transmission and Compressed Transfer.

R New Archive	Job				
1	✓ Archive Source	2 • Pi	imary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
	Archive Destination		Retention Policy	Speed Controller	
	Encrypted Transmissio	n On	0		

**Encrypted Transmission**: The data transmitted from backup storage to archive storage will be encrypted to ensure the safety of the data transmission.

### Retention Policy

The retention policy of the backup archive job can be configured per the number of restore points.

Archive Archive	Job				
1	✓ Archive Source	2 ✓ Pri	mary Strategy	3 Advanced Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
	Ø Archive Destination		Retention Policy	Speed Controller	
	Retention Mode	* Number of Res V	0		
	Restore Points	* 30 ^ ~			

For example, if the number of restore points is configured as 30, there will always be 30 full backup restore points stored in the backup archive storage.

#### Speed Controller

The speed controller settings are optional, only if the backup archive jobs will bring network or I/O overload to your production environment, you need to configure the speed controller accordingly.

### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings.

Rew Archive Job		
1	2 v Primary Strategy 3	Advanced Strategy 4 Review & Confirm
Job N	e : Archive Job1	
	Specify a customized job name if needed.	
Archive Source		
Archive Se	e: 192.168.124.10/Datacenter/Cluster/122.10 - zentao	
Mode		
1	e: Archive as scheduled	
Start	e: Every Friday, 23:00:00Start	
Advanced Strategy		
Archive Destin	n: Destination Storage: Ceph_S3(Cloud Object Storage)	
Transmission Str	y: Encrypted Transmission: ON	
Retention P	: 30 Restore Point(s)	
Speed Cont	er: N/A	

You can optionally customize a job name and then click on Submit button to confirm the creation of this backup archive job.

### Archive Job Operations

Once a backup archive job had been created, you will be redirected to the **Monitor Center > Jobs** page.

<b>8</b> C	Current Jobs	<b>່ງ</b> History Job	s 🕎 VM Bao	kup 🗎 File Backup	🕒 Backup Copy/Archive						
								Search by job	name	Search	Q Advanced search
	Job Name	•	Јор Туре   🍦	Target storage 🛛 🗍	Target Node	Next Run	Status	Duration	Speed	Progress	Operation
÷	Archive Job1		Archive	Ceph_S3	hsrv65.vinchin(192.168.64.77)	2021-12-31 23:00:00	Pending				실 Options ~
							Page	< 1 →	of 1   View	10 🗸 re	cords   Total 1 record

The job status will be pending, and it should be automatically executed according to the scheduled time. You are also able to manually run the job by clicking on **Options** and select **Start Job**. Or if you want to stop the job, you can click on **Options** and select **Stop**.

After the backup archive job is completed, the backup archive data will be stored in the target backup archive storage. And if it's a once-off backup archive job, the job will be automatically deleted once completed, if it's a scheduled backup archive job, the job status will change to pending again and wait for the next run.

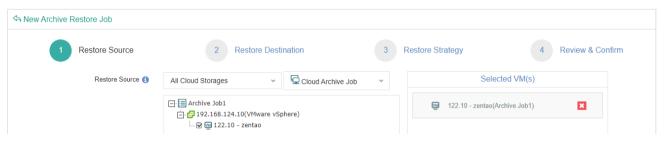
# **Archive Restore**

Backup archive data stored on the cloud storage cannot be used to restore virtual machine directly, it should be restored to an on-site storage first, then from the **VM Backup** > **Restore** page you can create a VM restore job to restore the virtual machine.

To create an archive restore job, please go to **Backup Archive** > **Archive Restore** page, then follow the steps below to create an archive restore job.

### Step 1: Restore Source

Select a cloud storage which stores your archive data, and then select the restore point(s).



#### Click on Next to continue.

#### Note

As the archive data stored on the on-site archive storage can be used to restore virtual machines directly, so you don't have to restore the on-site archive data.

### **Step 2: Restore Destination**

Select an on-site storage where you want to save the restored archive data.

A New Archive Restore Job			
1 v Restore Source	2 Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Target Node	hsrv65.vinchin(192.168.64.77)		~
Target Storage	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :5.45TB, Free Space:5.4	4TB), Node: hsrv65.vinchin(192.168.64.77)	~

### Step 3: Restore Strategy

Restore strategy including Encrypted Transmission and Compressed Transfer.

A New Archive Restore Job			
1 v Restore Source	2 v Restore Destination	3 Restore Strategy	4 Review & Confirm
Advanced Strategy *	Transmission Strategy Speed Controller		
	Encrypted Transmission On	0	

**Encrypted Transmission**: The archive data transmitted from cloud storage to on-site storage will be encrypted to ensure the safety of the data transmission.

**Speed Controller**: The speed controller settings are optional, only if the archive restore job will bring network or I/O overload to your production environment, you need to configure the speed controller accordingly.

### Step 4: Review & Confirm

After completing the above settings, you are able to review and confirm the settings.

A New Archive Restore Job	
1 ✓ Restore Source	2 • Restore Destination 3 • Restore Strategy 4 Review & Confirm
Job Name :	Archive Restore Job1
	Specify a customized job name if needed.
Restore Source	
Restore Source:	192.168.124.10/Datacenter/Cluster/122.10 - zentao(VMware vSphere)
Restore Destination	
Target Node:	hsrv65.vinchin(192.168.64.77)
Target Storage:	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :5.45TB, Free Space:5.44TB), Node: hsrv65.vinchin(192.168.64.77)
Restore Strategy	
Transmission Strategy:	Encrypted Transmission: ON
Speed Controller:	N/A

You can optionally customize a job name and then click on Submit button to confirm the creation of this archive restore job.

After a new archive restore job has been created, you will be redirected to the **Monitor Center** > **Jobs** page, and you will immediately see the archive restore job run automatically.

🚯 Cui	rrent Jobs 🤊 History Jobs	VM Backup	的 Backup Copy/Archi	ve						
							Search by	job name	Search	Q Advanced search
J	ob Name 🔻	Job Type 🔅	Target storage	Target Node	Next Run	Status 🕴	Duration	Speed 🕴	Progress 🕴	Operation
+ A	Archive Restore Job1	Archive Restore	Local Disk1	hsrv65.vinchin(192.168.64.77)		Running	00:00:14	2.89MB/s	1.43%	한 Options ~

Once the archive restore job is completed, the job will be automatically deleted from the current job list. Now you can go to **VM Backup** > **Restore** page and create a VM restore job with the restored archive data.

# Archive Data

All archive data can be managed from the **Backup Archive** > **Archive Data** page. No matter the data is storage in the on-site storage or cloud storage.

Sective Data	
Archive Job List	© Restore Point List
E Delete     All Storages     Search by VM name.     Search by VM name.     D	Manage archived restore points       ×         1.Unfold the backup archive storage(s) on the left to view all backup archive job(s).       2.Unfold the backup archive job(s) to view all archive data (restore points) generated by this job.         3.Select one restore point or a job and click [Delete] to delete one restore point or all the restore points of this job.       4.Select a backup archive storage and click [Delete] to delete all archived restore points from this storage.

By unfolding the archive storages or the archive jobs, you are able to view all the archive data. And by selecting corresponding restore points, archive job or the archive storage, you are able to delete the selected archive data. By clicking on a virtual machine, you'll be able to see all the archive restore points of the virtual machine.

No.	Time Point	туре	Data Size	Written Size				
				al-84.111(VMware vSphere) Written Size Storage Remark Operation Mark 1GB AWS S3 (backupserver vi nchin(192.168.8 4.100)) Page < 1 ≥ of 1. View 10 マ records   Total 1 record(s) ently. ×				
1	2020-10-21 13:34:29	Full Backup	1.74GB	1GB	(backupserver.vi nchin(192.168.8		Options ∨	
					Page < 1	> of 1   View	10 v records   Tot	al 1 record
	Note:				13:34:29 Note: Once marked, the restore point will be reserved permanently.	nchin(192.168.8 4.100)) Page < 1	nchin(192.168.8 4.100)) Page < 1 > of 1   View	13:34:29         (backupservervi nchin(192:168.8 4.100))           Page < 1 > of 1  View 10          records   Tot

By clicking on Options, you will be able to remark or delete the restore point.

And by clicking on the  $\stackrel{f}{\sim}$  icon, you are able to mark a restore point, the marked restore point(s) will be kept permanently, and even the retention policy will not delete the marked restore point(s).

# Resources

# **Backup Node**

If you had deployed Vinchin Backup Node, the Backup Node can be managed on the **Resources** > **Backup Node** page.

👍 Bac	kup Node Li	st				
C Edit	t 🔒 Delete					
	No.	Node Name	IP Address	Add Time	Deploy Status	Node Status
	1	backupnode.vinchin	192.168.84.101	2020-09-17 11:04:27	Deployed	Normal
~	2	backupserver.vinchin	192.168.84.100	2020-09-16 16:24:47	Deployed	Normal
					Page < 1 > of 1   View	10 v records   Total 2 record(s

The connection of a Backup Node to the Backup Server is configured during the installation process of the Backup Node, for more details please refer to the Installation Guide of Vinchin Products.

The Node Name is as per to hostname you configured during the installation, if you want to modify the Node name, please select the node and click on the **Edit** button.

To delete a Backup Node from Vinchin Backup Server (the server node cannot be deleted), please make sure there's no storage added on the backup node which is in use by any backup job. Otherwise please delete the jobs and then delete the storage added to this backup node. After this you can power off the backup node and its status will change to offline, you can delete it when it's offline.

# Storage

The storages for Backup, Backup Copy and Backup Archive can be added and managed from the **Resources** > **Storage** page.

### Add Storage

For how to add storages to Vinchin Backup Server/Node, please refer to Add Storages.

### Manage Storages

All storages add to Vinchin Backup Server/Node can be managed from Vinchin Backup Server web console, from the **Resources** > **Storage** page.

🚳 Sto	rage L	.ist								
+ Add	Ø	idit 📋 De	lete 🛢 Manage Imported E	Backups			ę	Search by storage name	Search Q/	Advanced search
		No.	Storage Name	Туре	Mount Node	Node Status	Capacity	Free Space	Storage Status 🕴	Purpose 🕴
+		1	Cloud Storage	Cloud Storage	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	Normal	10TB	10TB	Normal	Archive
+		2	Cloud Storage1	Cloud Storage	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	Normal	2TB	2TB	Normal	Archive
+		3	Partition1	Partition	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	Normal	1023.5GB	1010.7GB	Normal	Backup
÷		4	LVM1	LVM	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	Normal	498.76GB	498.72GB	Normal	Backup

By selecting a storage and click on **Edit** button, you are able to edit specific settings of the selected storage.

By selecting a storage and click on **Delete** button, you are able to delete this storage from Vinchin Backup Server or Backup Node. If there's backup/copy/archive data on the target storage, the data will not be deleted from the storage.

For managing imported backup data, please refer to Data Importing and Storage Formatting.

# LAN-Free

Vinchin Backup Server currently supports Fibre Channel, iSCSI and NFS for LAN-Free backup and restore through the SAN (Storage Area Network).

If you want to implement LAN-Free backup and restore, Vinchin Backup Server needs to meet the following requirements:

- Vinchin Backup Server is installed on a dedicated physical server.
- For fibre channel SAN, the physical server needs a fibre channel HBA (Host Bus Adaptor) interface card to be able to connect to the fibre channel SAN via the FC switch.
- For iSCSI and NFS (IP SAN), the physical server needs an extra NIC to be able to connect to the storage area network via the storage network switch.
- LAN-Free path needs to be configured.

To add LAN-Free path, please follow the instructions below.

### Note

1. LAN-Free backup and restore is not supported with Microsoft Hyper-V and Sangfor HCI in Vinchin Backup & Recovery version v6.5.

2. The following instructions are for reference only, as the LUN mapping varies from different storage servers.

### Fibre Channel

From Vinchin Backup Server web interface, on the Resources > LAN-Free page, click on Add button to add a fibre

C LAN-Free Path Settings									
Node IP/Domain *	localhost.localdomain(192.168.64.132)								
	Production storage will be mounted to the selected backup node.								
Storage Type *	Fibre C	Fibre Channel							
	Select a type for the Storage.								
Fibre Channel	No.	Channel		wwnn		wwpn		Speed	Status
	1	1 host0 20:00:00:1b:32:81:6e:f1				21:00:00:1b:32:81:6e:f1		4 Gbit	online
	Map the tar	Map the target FC LUN to the corresponding WWN.							

channel storage, in the **Storage Type** field, please select **Fibre Channel**.

Now Vinchin Backup Server will detect the fibre channel and the wwpn of the HBA interface card, use these information to map the LUN of the production storage to Vinchin Backup Server from the storage server management interface.

Partition Status			
Partition Information		Caj	pacity
FC for 214	Size: ID: Status: Map:	2.5 TB 1F36115D1F3F698F	Total Capacity: 2.5 TB Used Space: 2.5 TB (100%) Free Space: 0 MB (0%)
LUN Mapping Information			
Channel		Host ID	Assignment
Channel 7		2100001B32810539(64.214)	Slot A
Channel 7		2100001B32816EF1	Slot A

The Host ID marked with blue belongs to the production host, the Host ID marked with red belongs to Vinchin Backup Server, which means the same LUN had been mapped to both of them.

Add the fibre channel again, Vinchin Backup Server will recognize the LUN which is mapped to it, and the storage will be able to be added to Vinchin Backup Server as LAN-Free path.

Node ID (Damaia d	le colle o	t lessidemain/400.40	S8 64 132)					
Node IP/Domain *		t.localdomain(192.16						
	Production s	lorage will be mounted to	o the selected backup node.					
Storage Type *	Fibre Cl	iannel	Ŧ					
	Select a type	e for the Storage.						
Fibre Channel	No.	Channel 🔺	wwnn	wwpn			Speed	Status
	1	host0	20:00:00:1b:32:81:6e:f1	21:00:00	1b:32:81:6e:f1		4 Gbit	online
	Map the targ	et FC LUN to the corresp	ponding WWN.					
Storage Resource *		Name		*	Туре	Cap	pacity	
	~	/dev/sdc			Fibre Channel	10 1	ТВ	
	Select a pro	Juction storage as LAN-F	Free path. All the original data on this stor	age will not be chan	ged.			
Name	Fibre Ch							
	Type a name	e for the storage.						

Select the production storage and click OK to add it to the LAN-Free Path List.

#### > iscsi

From Vinchin Backup Server web interface, on the **Resources** > **LAN-Free** page, click on **Add** button to add an iSCSI storage, in the **Storage Type** field, please select **iSCSI**.

C LAN-Free Path Settings	C LAN-Free Path Settings				
Node IP/Domain *	localhost.local(192.168.84.190)	~			
	The storage will be mounted to the selected backup node.				
Storage Type *	ISCSI	~			
	Select one of the Storage types.				
iSCSI Name *	iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:347bf96bc2c7(101.42)				

Please use the IQN to map the LUN of the production storage to the backup server from the storage server management interface.

Partition Status						
Partition Information			Capacity			
ISCSI for 214	Size: ID: Status: Map:	200 GB 2F3790842B45FD3C S The volume has been n Yes	nounted.	Total Capacity: 200 Used Space: 200 Gl Free Space: 0 MB (0)	B (100%)	
LUN Mapping Information						
Channel		Но	st ID		Assignment	
Channel 0		iqn	.1998-01.com.vmware:5875f5f0-6ccb-6f7c-a3fa	a-Occ47acb2262-2f3caf00(64	Slot A	^
Channel 0		iqn	.1994-05.com.redhat:347bf96bc2c7(101.42)		Slot A	

The Host ID marked with blue belongs to the production host, the Host ID marked with red belongs to Vinchin Backup Server, which means the same LUN had been mapped to both of them.

After this, add the iSCSI storage again, and input the storage server IP address in the iSCSI Server field and click on **Scan Target** button to scan the target storage.

The system will discover the production LUN storage which is mapped to Vinchin backup server, and the storage will be able to be added to Vinchin Backup Server as LAN-Free path.

iSCSI Server *	192.168.64 Enter IP addres	4.43 ss of the iSCSI server. PI	✓ lease make F	326C 🗸		
		ork between the backup n connected. If multiple pa DDRESS				
	Scan Targe	et				
Target LUN *		Name 🔺	iqn		Туре	Capacity
	<b>v</b>	/dev/sdc	ign.2002-10.com.i	nfortrend:raid.uid335812.101	iSCSI	100GB

Select the production storage and click OK to add it to the LAN-Free Path List.

### NFS Storage

If the production system uses NFS shared storage as the production storage, the NFS storage can be added to Vinchin Backup Server as LAN-Free path.

From Vinchin Backup Server web interface, on the **Resources** > **LAN-Free** page, click on **Add** button to add an iSCSI storage, in the **Storage Type** field, please select **NFS**.

C LAN-Free Path Settings			
Node I	IP/Domain •	backupserver.vinchin(192.168.84.100)	~
		The storage will be mounted to the selected backup node.	
Sto	orage Type *	NFS	~
		Select one of the Storage types.	
Sha	ared Folder *	192.168.67.9:/root/nfs	~
		NFS shared folder, e.g. 192.168.1.10:/path/directory config the mount params	

In the **Shared Folder** field, simply type in the path of the NFS production storage to add it to Vinchin Backup Server as LAN-Free path.

After adding the LAN-Free path, while creating a backup/restore job, the transmission strategy should select SAN (LAN-Free).

### Warning

The production storage which has been mapped to the Vinchin backup server as LAN-Free path should NOT be added as a backup storage! Adding a LAN-Free path as a backup storage will cause the production storage been

formatted, all the production data will be erased.

*If LAN-Free is only used in backup job, not in restore job, the production LUN can be mapped to the backup server with read-only permission.* 

# **Strategy Templates**

Strategy templates for backup jobs and restore jobs can be pre-configured from **Resources** > **Strategy** page. When users creating new backup or restore jobs, the strategy templates can be used to reduce the work of setting up various common settings.

Add Template Template Name \* Template1 Strategy template name Description Description of this strategy template Template Type VM Backup Choose to create a VM backup strategy template or a VM restore strategy template 0 Schedule Speed Controller 0 Data Storage Policy 6 Retention Policy 6 6 Advanced Strategy

Click on the Add button to add a new strategy template.

In the **Group Name** field, you can define a name for this template, and in the **Description** field you can optionally add some descriptions of this template.

In the **Type** dropdown list, you can select to create a backup job strategy template or a restore job strategy template.

For the **Schedule**, **Speed Controller**, **Data Storage Policy**, **Retention Policy** and **Advanced Strategy**, you can optionally enable and configure some of those settings in this template, the settings which are not enabled and configured in this template, when you creating a backup job and select this template, those un-configured settings will be given with system default settings.

For backup restore job strategy templates, the principles are the same as creating a backup job strategy template.

Add strategy template		
Group Name *	strategy template2	
Description	vmware restore	
Туре	Restore ~	
Time Schedule	Off ()	
Speed Controller	Off 3	
Advanced Strategy	Off 3	

For more detailed explanations of configuring backup job strategy templates, please refer to <u>Create Backup Job</u>, and for the backup restore job strategy templates, please refer to <u>Create Restore Job</u>.

# System

# System Settings

### **Network Settings**

### **IP Address**

The network profile of Vinchin Backup Server should be well configured during the installation process. If modifications are required, you can do it from **System** > **System Settings** > **Network Settings** page.

IP Address	13 Local DNS Lookup	🚵 Link Aggregation	
	Backup Node *	localhost.localdomain(192.168.121.8 10.10.1 V	
		Select a backup node to configure its network profiles.	
	Network Interface *	ens192 🗸	0
		Please select a network interface to configure its network profiles.	
	IP Address	192.168.121.8	
		Please enter a valid IP address for this interface, e.g., 192.168.1.168	
	Subnet Mask	255.255.192.0	
		Please enter the valid subnet mask, e.g., 255.255.255.0	
	Default Gateway	192.168.64.1	
		Please enter the valid gateway IP, e.g., 192.168.1.1	
	DNS Server(s)	8.8.8.8	
		Please enter valid DNS server IP, for multiple DNS servers, separate the IPs with comma, e.g., 192.168.1.1,192.168.1.2	
		Cancel OK	

From the **Backup Node** dropdown list, you can select a backup node to modify its network profiles.

From the Network Interface dropdown list, you can select a network interface to set its network profiles.

And the below settings including IP address, subnet mask, default gateway and DNS server.

### Warning

1. If the IP address of the backup server had been changed, please type in the new IP address in the browser address bar to reopen the backup server web console.

2. Please DO NOT change the IP address of Vinchin Backup Server unless it's really necessary! After changing the IP address of backup server will result in disconnection of the backup node and the backup plugins, please change the listening IP of the backup node and the backup plugins accordingly.

### Local DNS Lookup

If an ESXi host was added to the vCenter via its domain name, then this ESXi host's corresponding domain name needs to be configured in the Vinchin backup server, so that Vinchin backup server will be able to communicate with the ESXi hosts. Otherwise, the VM backup jobs will fail.

P IP Address	🗗 Local DNS Lookup	Link Aggregation
	Backup Node *	localhost.localdomain(192.168.121.8 10.10.1 🗸
		Please select a backup node to setup local DNS lookup.
	DNS Entries *	192.168.64.21       host.21.com         192.168.64.22       host.22.com         192.168.64.23       host.23.com
		Format: IP_address host_name The IP address and the host name should be separated by at least one space. Each entry should be an individual line.
	Sync Settings	On Enable to synchronize the local DNS lookup settings to all backup nodes.
		Cancel OK

First fill in the IP address of the ESXi host and its domain name separated with a space. If there are multiple ESXi hosts, please fill in the DNS records in different lines. After this please click OK to save.

If you have deployed backup node(s) to Vinchin Backup Server, please enable DNS Sync option, so you don't have to configure DNS settings for each node separately.

### Link Aggregation

Link aggregation is the combining (aggregating) of multiple network connections in parallel by any of several methods, in order to increase network throughput or provide redundancy of the network links.

Link aggregation is optional, if you want to setup link aggregation group, your Vinchin backup server or node must have multiple network interfaces available.

In Backup Node dropdown list, you should select a node on which you wish to setup link aggregation.

IP Address IP Address IP Address	p 🖾 Link Aggregation
Backup Node *	localhost.localdomain(192.168.123.18)
	Select a backup node to setup link aggregation.
Aggregation Mode *	Active-backup (active-backup)
Network Interface *	ens192(bond0), ens224(bond0) ~
	Select the NICs to be added to link aggregation group.
IP Address *	192.168.123.18
	Please enter a valid IP address for this interface, e.g., 192.168.1.168
Subnet Mask *	255.255.192.0
	Please enter the valid subnet mask, e.g., 255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	192.168.64.1
	Please enter the valid gateway IP, e.g., 192.168.1.1
DNS Server(s)	192.168.1.1,192.168.1.2
	Please enter valid DNS server IP, for multiple DNS servers, separate the IPs with comma, e.g., 192.168.1.1,192.168.1.2
	Cancel OK Delete Link Aggregation

There are 4 aggregation mode: Round-robin(balance-rr), Active-backup (active-backup), Dynamic link aggregation (802.3ad, LACP) and Adaptive load balancing (balance-alb). Please select the desired mode which suits your requirement.

Aggregation Mode *	Round-robin (balance-rr)	~	0
Network Interface *	Round-robin (balance-rr) Active-backup (active-backup) Dynamic link aggregation (802.3ad, LACP) Adaptive load balancing (balance-alb)		

In Network Interface dropdown list, select the network interfaces which you wish to add to the link aggregation group.

Network Interface *	ens192(bond0), ens224(bond0)	~
IP Address *	ens192(bond0)	~
	ens224(bond0)	~

Fill the rest fields, click on OK, the network services will restart, please be patient to wait the link aggregation complete.

### **Time Settings**

The time settings should have been done during the installation of Vinchin Backup Server, but if you want to modify the time settings, for example, set the system to use manual time or NTP time can be done from **System > System Settings > Time Settings**.

(1) Time Settings		
Current Location *	Asia/Shanghai	~
	Please select a location, system will auto-match the corresponding timezone.	
Current Time *	2021-12-28 11:52:24	Ê
	Please select or enter current time.(yyyy-mm-dd hh:m	m:ss)
NTP Sync	Off	
	Enable to synchronize to NTP time.	
	Changing the system time will cause automatically synchronize the time and	×
	configuration to all backup nodes.	
	Cancel OK	

In the **Time Zone** field, you should select the correct time zone that you are located in. And if you want to set a manual time, you can select from the calendar or manually input the current time in the **Manual Time** field. If you want to synchronize the current time from an NTP server, please enable **NTP Time**, and then specify a desired NTP server address in the **NTP Server** field, after this click on the **Sync Now** button to obtain time from the specified NTP server, or you can click on OK button to save the settings and do the time synchronization.

C Time Settings		
Current Location *	Asia/Shanghai	~
	Please select a location, system will auto-match the timezone.	corresponding
Current Time *	2021-12-28 11:55:05	<b>m</b>
	Please select or enter current time.(yyyy-mm-dd hh:r	mm:ss)
NTP Sync	On	
	Enable to synchronize to NTP time.	
NTP Server *	time.nist.gov 👻	Sync Now

#### Warning

Please make sure the time settings are correct and accurate, as if you had deployed backup node(s), the time settings will be automatically synchronized to all backup nodes connected to this backup server, and as a result, all the scheduled job will run based on the current backup server time.

### Notifications

Email Notifications can be enabled to send various kinds of notifications and reports of Vinchin backup server to the administrator and other recipients for users to be informed of the running status of Vinchin backup services.

System Settings - Notification		
A Email Notification		
Email Notification:	Off	Email Test
	Please click "Email Test" to finish the mail server test before enabling Email Notification.	

To enable email notification, first make sure you had specified an Email address from **admin** > **My Information**, then click on Email Test to complete the mail server settings.

🛆 Email Test		×
Mail Server *	smtp.gmail.com	
	POP3/IMAP/SMTP server address, can be domain name or IP address	
Port *	465	
	Mail server port, e.g. 25	
Sender's Mail	username@gmail.com	
*	The sender's mail address, e.g. support@163.com	
Password		
	Sender's mailbox password	
Encryption *	SSL v	
	Email encrypted connection type	
	Send a Test Email to user@company.com	
	Cancel S	ave

You can either use the built-in Vinchin mail service or you can configure your own mail services. To configure your own outgoing mail services, the mail server can be POP3, IMAP or SMTP, you can choose one of the mail server type and configure the mail service as per the instructions of your mail service provider.

In the above example, Gmail SMTP is used as the outgoing mail server. The **Mail server** should be smtp.gmail.com, **Encryption** should be SSL or TLS, the **Port** number should be 465 or 587, and you must configure a mail account here as the sender. After this, you can click on **Send a Test Email** to test the mail services. The recipient of the test email is the current user, whose Email address is configured in the user information settings.

You should now receive a test email stated as below.

$\leftarrow$		1 of 24	$\langle \rangle$	> ==	<b>.</b> .
	This is a test email Inbox ×			ē	Ø
	Vinchin <pre>cyroduct@vinchin.com&gt; to me *</pre>	1:54 PM (0 minutes ago)	☆	4	:
	This is an email to test the availability of the mail server. If you received this email, it means the email service is available!				

After you had received the test email please save the mail service settings, then you are able to enable Email notification. Once enabled, you are able to configure how the notifications to be sent.

**System Alert** is not enabled by default, you may enable it if required. The system level notice, warning and error messages are configurable to be sent to specific user(s) via emails.

System Alert:	On
System Notification Level :	Notice (prompt message, no need process)
	Warning ( notifying this action may cause system or job error)
	Frror ( notifying the system or job error)

It is recommended to enable sending critical system level notifications, as users don't have to pay much attention on the system level notices.

The Job Alert can be enabled to send backup/restore job level notifications, including job success notices, warnings or errors of the jobs.

Job Alerts :	On
Job Notification Level :	Warning ( notifying this action may cause system or job error)
	Error ( notifying the system or job error)

**Report** can be enabled to send reports of the storage usage and VM protection status on a specific time point or multiple time points on daily, weekly, monthly and yearly basis.

Report:	On	
Туре:	✓ Storage Report	
	VM Report	
Time Schedule:	Daily 🗸	Report Status On
	Weekly	Report Time 9:00:00 Ø
	Monthly	
	Yearly	

After setting up the notification types and timing, in the Email address field you can optionally enter more user Emails to add them to the Email notification mailing list. The Email address of your own is not needed to be added from here.

Email Address	username1@gmail.com username2@gmail.com

The system alerts and reports will be sent to the system administrator by default. The job alerts will be sent to the creator by default. The newly added recipient will receive all the enabled notifications.

### **Security Settings**

From System > System Settings > Security Settings page, admin user can configure Account Security, Storage Security and System Security settings.

### Account Security

Account security settings define some global user account configurations, including Vinchin backup server web console session timeout, max password retry, password expiration time, minimum password length and password complexity settings.

🖲 Account Security 🖾 Storage Security 🖙 Sy	Account Security 🖾 Storage Security 🖾 System Security			
Session Timeout	900 🗸			
	Web console session will timeout when exceeded the given number of seconds.			
Password Retry	999 🗸			
	User will be locked when exceeded the given number of password retry.			
Password Expiration	1000 🗸			
	Password will expire when exceeded the given number of days.			
Password Length	6			
	Minimum password length required.			
Password Complexity	Medium(Must contain letters (case insensitive), numbers and s $$ $\checkmark$			
	Weak(Contain letters (case insensitive) and numbers) Medium(Must contain letters (case insensitive), numbers and special chara			
	Strong(Must contain lowercase and uppercase letters, numbers and specia	I characters)		
	Cancel OK			

The Session Timeout option determines when the web console session will expire due to inactive user activity.

**Password Retry** options determines the max password retry allowed before a user account is locked. Once a user account is locked, admin user needs to unlock this user account from **System > User Management > Users** page (admin user will not be locked).

**Password Expiration** option determines how long the user account password expires, when the password is about to expire, user will receive popup notification on the web console, when password is expired, user will be redirected to the change password screen to change password and re-login.

For the **Password Length** and **Password Complexity**, these 2 options determine the minimum password length and the password complexity rule.

### Storage Security

Under **Storage Security** tab, you are able to enable **Storage Protection** which can effectively protect your backup data stored in the backup storage.

Account Security	Storage Security	☑ System Security	
	Storage Protection	Off Enable/disable storage protection	
		With storage protection enabled, only Vinchin applications will have permissions to write new data and modify existing data within the storages attached to Vinchin backup server. This feature can keep your data safe from malicious attacks, ransomware and other malwares. It works with direct attached storages on Vinchin backup server, for the network attached storages, e.g., CIFS/NFS shares, storage protection is not applicable.	
		Cancel OK	

By default, storage protection is disabled, when enabled, only Vinchin applications are allowed to modify the backup data saved in the backup storages attached to Vinchin backup server/node. And as a result, it can protect your backup data against ransomware and other malwares from modifying your backup data.

#### Note

1. Before upgrading Vinchin software, please temporarily disable Storage Protection, otherwise, software upgrade will fail. After upgrading, please turn it back on.

2. To guarantee Storage Protection always works, the backup storage of Vinchin backup server must be exclusive block devices, like local disks, disk partitions, logical volumes, fibre channel LUNs and iSCSI LUNs, for other file storages, Storage Protection might not work, because ransomware and other malwares might access your backup data by-passing Vinchin backup server.

### System Security

Account Security  Storage Security	♀ System Security	
Firewall	Off	
	Enable/disable system firewall.	
SSH	Off Enable/disable SSH service.	
	System security settings will be automatically $$\times$$ synchronized to all backup nodes.	
		-
	Cancel OK	

Under System Security tab, you are able to turn Vinchin backup server firewall and SSH services on or off.

Vinchin backup server has some built-in security rules configured with the system firewall, it can be enabled for system security. While it also has the necessary services enabled to ensure the functionalities of backup and restore activities.

For SSH option, it determines whether users can connect to Vinchin backup server CLI via SSH connection. It is recommended to disable this option when SSH access to Vinchin backup server CLI is not needed.

### **Restart & Shutdown**

Restart and Shutdown functionalities can be used for the backup server or backup node(s) maintenance or some other circumstances which require system restart or power off.

() Restart/Shutdown			
	Backup Node *		~
		Please select a backup node to restart or shutdown.	
		Restart Shutdown	

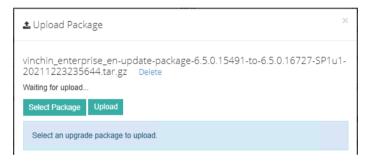
You can select the target node then click on Restart or Shutdown button to perform the corresponding operation to the select node. Both restart and shutdown operation will terminate backup/restore jobs on the selected system, so before doing this, please make sure there's no job running on the selected node.

# Upgrade

When new software or patch upgrade for Vinchin Backup Server or Backup Node is required, you can upload and upgrade Vinchin backup server or backup node from here.

💼 Upg	rade Package 🔊 Upgrade History				
Current Ve	ersion: build: 6.5.0.15891-TEST-WEB-UPDATE				
🛓 Uploa	d Package 💼 Delete Package 💿 Upgrade Now				
	Package Name	MD5	Package Size	Upload Time	
		No available data			

To upload a software package, please click on **Upload Package** button. In the popup dialog, click on Select Package to locate the software package.



You can upload multiple packages at a time, once selected all packages, please click **Upload** button to start uploading the selected software package(s).

urrent	Version: build: 6.5.0.15891-TEST-WEB-UPDATE				
🕹 Uple	pad Package 💼 Delete Package 💿 Upgrade Now				
	Package Name	MD5	Package Size	Upload Time	
	Fackage Name	WD5	Fackage Size	opioad Time	
	vinchin_enterprise_en-update-package-6.5.0.15491-to-6.5.0.16727-S	8943edfc79a8693ac676fe941b1c3ad7	722.71MB	2021-12-28 16:25:09	

Once uploaded, please select the target package and then click on the **Upgrade Now** button.

O Upgrade			×
Package Name:	vinchin_enterprise_en-update-package-6.5.0.15491-to- 6.5.0.16727-SP1u1-20211223235644.tar.gz		
Upgrade	Master Nodevinchin.tech(192.168.120.2)	~	
Mode:	Master Nodevinchin.tech(192.168.120.2)		

In the popup dialog, select the backup node and click on OK to upgrade. Please make sure you first upgrade the backup server (master node) then upgrade the backup node (slave node).

If you have multiple backup node deployed, you can select them all and upgrade them at the same time.

Note

Software upgrade will require service restart, please make sure there're not jobs running on the backup server or backup node before upgrading.

# Data Visualization

Data visualization is a value-added feature which is available in Vinchin Backup & Recovery Enterprise edition, it briefly presents the real-time status and useful information of the virtual infrastructure, protected virtual machines, backup storage, history jobs, current running jobs and more other information in a single intuitive graphical screen. It can help users monitoring the backup infrastructure status on a command center screen or large screen monitors.

To open the data visualization screen, please click on the 💻 icon from the top right of Vinchin Backup Server web console.

# vinchin



A new tab page of data visualization will be opened.

Users can customize the data visualization project name from the **System > System Settings > Data Visualization** page.

System Settings - Data Visualization		
Data Visualization		
Data Visualization Title	Vinchin Backup & Recovery  Cancel OK	

# System Tools

#### System Services

Service management can be used to check the backup server or backup node system service status and you can start, stop or restart the services.

vinchin.tech(19	32.168.120.2) × (1		Search by service name Search
No.	Service Name	Status	Operation
I	appliance_server.service	Running	한 Options ~
2	arp-ethers.service	Stopped	은 Options ~
3	atd.service	Running	은 Options ~
l .	auditd.service	Running	한 Options ~
i	autovt@.service	Running	은 Options ~
;	backup_copy_client.service	Running	은 Options ~
,	backup_copy_server.service	Running	한 Options ~
3	blk-availability.service	Running	은 Options ~
1	brandbot.path	Stopped	은 Options ~
10	cdp_client.service	Stopped	✿ Options ∽
			Page < 1 > of 14   View 10 v records   Total 140 record

In the dropdown list, you can select from Vinchin Backup Server and the backup nodes registered to the backup server to check the service status and perform operations to the services. And you can search specific services by service name.

#### Warning

Service management is used for maintenance only, please DO NOT start/stop/restart any of the system services without the advice of a Vinchin engineer, otherwise your backup infrastructure may malfunction.

# **Network Tools**

Network tools can be used to exam and troubleshoot the connectivity of each backup server/node with the target IP network.

Ping test can be used to test the reachability from the selected backup node to a specific IP address.

System Settings - S	<b>192.168.124.10 test connect</b> 192.168.124.10 test connection	tion on success	×	
System Service Other	work Tools 🔄 Web SSH			
vinchin.tech(192.168.120.2)		~	0	
Ping ~ 1	92.168.124.10	~	Test	
Test the connectivity of a backup	node to the target IP or dom	ain name.		×

Telnet can only test the connectivity from the backup server to a specific host IP with a service port number.

System Settings - S     telnet 192.168.1     System Servic	4.10 : 443 test connection 4.10 : 443 test connection success	×
vinchin.tech(192.168.120.2)	~ <b>()</b>	
Telnet ~ 192.168.12	10 🖌 443	✓ Test
Test the connectivity of Vinchin backup server	r to the target IP or domain name. Co	nnectivity test for backup nodes is not supported. $ imes$

#### WebSSH & File Upload

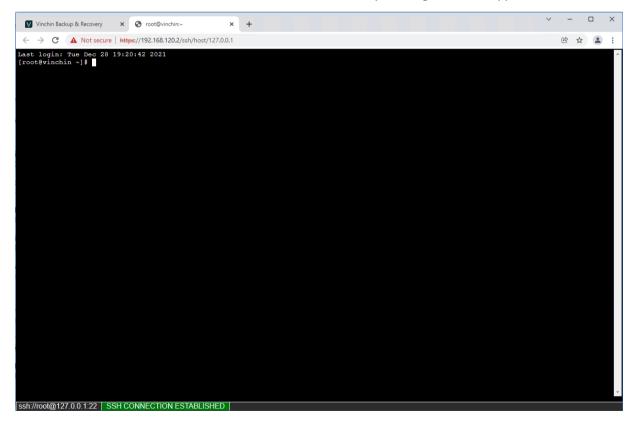
WebSSH can be used to connect to Vinchin backup server CLI directly through web browser, it is useful for server maintenance from CLI with using an additional SSH client application.

System Services  WebSSH	
C Run WebSSH	
Run WebSSH	
Run WebSSH in a new tab page, please provide root user credentials to enter system CLI.	×

Click on the **Run WebSSH** button, a new tab page will be opened and prompting for CLI user credentials.

Vinchin Backup & Recovery × 📀 https://192.168.120.2/ssh/ht	sst/1. × +
← → C ① 192.168.120.2/ssh/host/127.0.0.1	
	Sign in https://192.168.120.2 Username root Password Sign in Cancel

Simply enter the CLI user credentials and click on **Sign in** to connect to Vinchin backup server CLI. From within the WebSSH console, users are able to run commands the same way as using SSH client applications.



File upload can be used to upload certain types of files to Vinchin backup server file system without using a thirdparty tool.

Select a file you want to upload	Browse Upload	
1. Upload files to directory /usr/share/nginx/v	nchin/tmp/file	
	, ot exceed 1GB. Supported file format including: zip, tar, tar.gz and rar	
3. Please do not leave this page during uploa		

The supported file format including zip, tar, tar.gz, and rar, and the maximum file size allowed is 1GB. After uploading a file, users can find it from path /usr/share/nginx/vinchin/tmp/file/.

# **Configuration Backup**

Configuration backup feature allows you to export the configurations of Vinchin backup server as backup files, and the backup files can be used for configuration restoration purpose upon a Vinchin server reinstallation or upon a Vinchin server configuration accidental deletion.

#### Manual Backup

Select configurations which you wish to backup.

left Manual Backup	
Backup Source	<ul> <li>↔ User Management</li> <li>↔ Infrastructure</li> <li>↔ Multi-tenant</li> <li>↔ Backup Resource</li> <li>↔ Jobs</li> <li>↔ Alerts</li> <li>↔ Logs</li> </ul>
	Select configurations which you wish to backup.
	<ul> <li>1. The selected configurations will be exported as an individual file to your</li> <li>Downloads folder, please keep the configuration backup safe.</li> <li>2. When configuration restore needed, please directly upload a backup file to restore.</li> </ul>
	Cancel OK

The selected configurations will be exported as an individual file and downloaded to your Downloads folder, please keep the configuration backup safe.

When configuration restore needed, please directly upload a backup file to restore.

#### Auto Backup

Settings X∃ Manage Backups	
Auto Backup *	On
Backup Source *	Image: Image of the second
	Select configurations which you wish to backup.
Daily Backup at *	1:00:00 📀
Restore Points *	30 ^ ~
Backup Node *	vinchin.tech(192.168.120.2)
Backup Storage *	Local Disk1(Local Disk, Capacity :499.75GB, Free Space:498.83GB)
	1.With auto backup, configurations will be automatically exported and saved into the $\times$ selected backup storage. 2.When configuration restore needed, please directly upload a backup file to restore.
	Cancel OK

Auto Backup enables automatically backup of Vinchin backup server configurations on daily basis.

When enabled auto backup, users can select which configurations need to be backed up, and can pick a time of the day to run the backup. Restore points of the configuration backup determines how many (days of) backup files to be kept. A backup node and a corresponding backup storage can be selected to save the backup files. The configuration backups can be accessed under **Manage Backups** tab.

බූ Se	ttings X Manage Backups					
📥 Do	ownload 💼 Delete				Search by file name	Search
	Filename	File Size	Backup Time	Backup Node	Backup Storage	
	systembak.20211110.160004.bak	27.62KB	2021-11-10 16:00:04	localhost.localdomain(192.168.91. 18)	Local Disk_18	
				Page < 1 > of 1   Vie	₩ 10 🗸 records Total 1	record(

Select the desired backup file and click on Download to download the backup file to your Downloads folder, or if the backup file is not needed or contain invalid configurations, select the backup file and click on Delete to delete it from the backup storage.

## **Restore Backup**

When configuration restore is required, please go to **System > System Settings > Configuration Backup > Restore Backup** page.

Restore Backup	
Backup File *	~
	Auto Backup Manual Backup restore. 2. You can select part of the configurations you wish to restore. 3. System configuration restore will not erase existing configurations, the restored configurations will be apendded to existing configurations.
	Cancel OK

Select the backup file source, either auto backup or manual backup.

If Auto Backup, there will be a list of the backup files, you can simply select a desired backup file to restore the configurations.

88 Restore Backup							
Backup File *	Auto	Backup	~				
Select Backup File *		Filename	Size		Backup Time 💡		
		systembak.20211110.160004.ba k	27.62KB		2021-11-10 16:00:04		
	Please s	 elect a backup file which you wish to re	View 10		age < 1 > of 1 records   Total 1 record(s		
	<ol> <li>Please first select the backup file source, and then select a backup file to restore.</li> <li>You can select part of the configurations you wish to restore.</li> <li>System configuration restore will not erase existing configurations, the restored configurations will be apended to existing configurations.</li> </ol>						
	Canc	el OK					

If Manual Backup, you need to upload the configuration backup file to restore the configurations.

Restore Backup		
Backup File *	Manual Backup 🗸	
Upload Backup File *	systembak.20211110.172450.bak Delete Upload success Select Package Upload	
Restore Configurations *	<ul> <li></li></ul>	
	<ol> <li>Please select the configurations you want to restore.</li> <li>Please first select the backup file source, and then select a backup file to × restore.</li> <li>You can select part of the configurations you wish to restore.</li> <li>System configuration restore will not erase existing configurations, the restored configurations will be apendded to existing configurations.</li> </ol>	
	Cancel OK	

When the backup file is selected from the auto backup list or uploaded from user desktop to Vinchin backup server, please select the desired configurations you wish to be restored. Then click on **OK** to restore the configurations.

System configuration restore success.	
<ul> <li>Start system configuration restore</li> </ul>	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [User]	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [Groups]	2021-11-10 17:35:26
<ul> <li>Restore [Roles]</li> </ul>	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [Domain Server]	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [Backup Node]	2021-11-10 17:35:26
<ul> <li>Restore [Backup Storage]</li> </ul>	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [LAN-free]	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [Template]	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [Resource Group]	2021-11-10 17:35:26
Restore [Tenants]	2021-11-10 17:35:26

#### Note

*System configuration restore will not erase existing configurations; the restored configurations will be appended to existing configurations.* 

# **User Management**

For an enterprise, administrators of Vinchin backup server can add users from internal departments of the enterprise who owns Vinchin Backup & Recovery infrastructure. They can share the resources of the backup infrastructure, like backup node and storage resources. But they need to add their own workloads to Vinchin backup server for backup and restore, like virtual infrastructure, file servers and database servers. So, each department runs their own backup services separately on the same backup infrastructure.

# Users

Administrators are able to add multiple users from **System** > **User Management** > **Users** page. By clicking on the **Add** button administrator can add a new user.

요 Add User			
Basic Info			
User Type *	Local User	~	
Username *	johndoe	~	
Password *		~	
Confirm Password *		~	
Email Address	user@company.com	~	
Phone Number	0123456789	~	
Roles	Admin	~	
	Set role(s) for this user.		
Groups	Admin	~	
	Associate groups for this user.		
Storage Capacity *	Unlimited	~	0
	Cancel OK		

The **User Type** can be **Local User** or **External User**. For local user, administrator needs to create a new user locally within Vinchin backup server. If external user, domain server integration must be done first. The newly added users can be assigned with different user roles and can be associated with desired user groups for permission management. And for storage capacity allowed to be used by this user can be set as Unlimited or Customized. Once a user had been added, it will be listed on the user management page.

ይu	ser lis	st								
ßА	dd	₽ Edit ₽ Delete	P Enabled	🕆 Disabled	Add Resource					
	No.	Username  🍦	User Type 🍦	Belong to	Create Time 🔻	Creator 🔅	Email Address 🖨	Phone Number 🔷	Last Login  🍦	Status
	1	admin01	Local User	Global	2021-12-29 21: 24:42	admin	user@company.co m			Enabled

You have the options to enable or disable a user from accessing Vinchin Backup & Recovery. To delete a user, if the

user has created subusers, it cannot be deleted, the subusers need to be deleted first.

And before this user can start any backup and restore services, administrator has to assign resources to the user at first place. The resources can be assigned to users including backup proxy, backup node and backup storage. For the workloads which need to be backed up, users need to add from their own web portal, including virtual infrastructure (for VM backup), file backup agent and database backup agent.

If a user attempted to login with wrong password exceeded the Password Retry defined in Account Security settings, the account will be disabled. Only the administrator user who created that user has the permission to enable the account. Please select the disabled user and click on the **Enable** button to enable the user. *Note* 

Before deleting a user, you need to unregister all the virtual infrastructures registered by this user, otherwise the user cannot be deleted.

If the user role is admin and this admin user had added other users, then you need to delete the other users added by this admin user before deleting this admin user.

## Groups

A user group is a collection of users who share the same resources and permissions.

There are default user groups which can be used for user permission management, but if needed, administrator can create new user groups with customized permissions.

+ A	dd 🕼 Edit 📋 Delete 🖬 Ena	able 🔂 Disable 🛛	Add Resource				
	Groups 🙏	Туре 🕴	Status	Description	Belong to	Creator	Create Time
	Master	Default Group	Enable		Global		
	Admin	Global Group	Enable		Global	-	
	Operator	Global Group	Enable		Global	-	
	Auditor	Global Group	Enable		Global		

Click on **Groups** to view details about User, Roles, Resource Group and Permissions.

Click on Add Resource to add Backup Proxy, Backup Node, Storage Resources and Resource Group for groups. For the workloads which need to be backed up by the global users within the group, global users need to add from their own web portal, including virtual infrastructure (for VM backup), file backup agent and database backup agent.

# Roles

By default, there are 7 user roles available to be assigned to users or user groups.

Below are the permissions for different roles.

ୃ Us	er Role List				
+ Ad	d 🖣 Edit 🗊 Delete 🖬 Enable 🔂 Dis	able 🔳 Assign Role			
	Role Name	Status 👙	Belong to	Creator .	Create Time
	Admin	Enable	Global	-	
	Auditor	Enable	Global	-	
	Master	Enable	Global	-	
	Operator	Enable	Global		
	Tenant Admin	Enable	Global		
	Tenant Auditor	Enable	Global		
	Tenant Operator	Enable	Global	-	
				Page < 1 > of	1   View 10 v records   Total 7 record(s

Master: the highest permission, has all management rights of Vinchin Backup Server.

Admin: System Alerts, System Logs, Storage Report, VM Report, Backup Node, Storage, LAN-free, Resource Group, all the System dropdown list and all User Management.

**Operator**: Current Jobs, History Jobs, Job Alerts, Job Logs, VM report, VM Backup, Database Backup, File Backup, Backup Copy, Backup Archive and Strategy Templates.

Auditor: Current Jobs, History Jobs, Job Alerts, System Alerts, Job Logs, System Logs, Storage Report and VM Report.

**Tenant Admin**: Current Jobs, History Jobs, Job Alerts, Job Logs, System Logs, VM Report, VM Backup, Database Backup, File Backup, Strategy Templates, Resource Group, Tenant Info and all User Management.

**Tenant Operator**: Current Jobs, History Jobs, Job Alerts, Job Logs, VM report, VM Backup, Database Backup, File Backup and Strategy Templates.

**Tenant Auditor**: Current Jobs, History Jobs, Job Alerts, Job Logs and System Logs.

You can assign role to users or user groups by selecting a role and clicking on **Assign Role** button, select user or user group you wish to assign.

Assign Role ×	Assign Role	×
Assign to User Resign to Group	Assign to User	
Role Name: Admin	Role Name: Admin	
Users: admin(vinchin) ~	Groups: Admin ~	
	Select All Deselect All	
	Master	
	Admin 🗸	
	Operator	
	Auditor	
Cancel Assign to User	Cancel Assign t	to Group

Once a role had been assigned to a user or user group, the corresponding permissions of the role will be assigned to the user or user group as well.

If the default user roles cannot meet your actual requirements, you can also add customized new user roles by clicking on the Add button.

Add Role      Role Name *     Role Name *     Name of this role.      Permissions *     □
Permissions *
□ @ ₺ jobs         □ @ ₺ gement         □ @ 9 History Jobs         □ @ Delete         □ @ Download Logs         □ □ ↓ Alerts         □ □ ↓ Job Alerts         □ □ ↓ Job Alerts         □ □ ↓ Belete         □ □ ↓ Job Alerts         □ □ ↓ Job Alerts         □ □ ↓ Belete         □ □ ↓ Job Alerts         □ □ □ ↓ Belete         □ □ □ ↓ Job Alerts         □ □ □ ↓ Belete         □ □ □ ↓ Belete         □ □ □ □ belete         □ □ □ □ belete         □ □ □ □ □ belete         □ □ □ □ belete         □ □ □ □ belete         □ □ □ □ □ belete
Cancel OK

A role name is required to identify this new user role. And in the Permissions field, there's a tree menu showing all available web pages and operations of Vinchin web console, you can customize the permissions as per your needs.

#### **Domain Server**

Domain server integration allows administrator to do user authentication by using the domain server. When a domain server is integrated, while adding new users, administrator can select to add External User which is from domain server. We currently support Active Directory server integration.

Before adding the domain server, first you may need to setup local DNS lookup. Click on **System > System Settings > Network Settings > Local DNS Lookup**, to set up Local DNS lookup, by using "IP\_address host\_name" format DNS entry is the DNS entries field.

P IP Address	Local DNS Lookup	🖾 Link	Aggregation
	Backup	Node *	localhost.localdomain(192.168.123.19)
			Please select a backup node to setup local DNS lookup.
	DNS E	Entries *	192.168.30.41 skkwd.com
	Sync :	Settings	Format: IP_address host_name The IP address and the host name should be separated by at least one space Each entry should be an individual line. Off Enable to synchronize the local DNS lookup settings to all backup nodes.
			Cancel OK

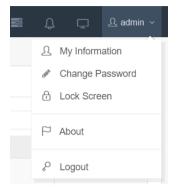
After setting up local DNS lookup, please go to **System > User Management > Domain Server** screen, click on Add button to add an Active Directory domain server.

+ Add D	omain Server		
	Domain Server *	Active Directory	~
		Select the domain server type y	ou want to add.
	Domain Name *	skkwd.com	~
	User Name *	administrator Domain server administrator us	×
		Domain server administrator us	er name.
	Password *	•••••	×
		Password for the domain serve	r admin.
		Cancel OK	

Once a domain server is added, you are able to add external users from Active Directory domain server.

# **Account Settings**

On the top right of Vinchin Backup Server web console, the current user login is displayed. Click on the username you'll be able to view the user information and manage some user settings.



# User Information

On the user information screen, users are able to modify some basic user settings.

A My Information		
Username	admin	
Email Address		
Phone Number		
Language	English	~

In the **Email Address** field, you need to fill in your Email address here, when you are trying to enable system notifications, an Email address is required here, and the system notifications will send to this Email address by default.

In the Phone Number field, you can optionally enter your phone number.

In the **Language** dropdown list, you can select a language which you are familiar with as the web console display language.

# **Change Password**

Users can change their own passwords here and it is recommended to use strong password for system security. A strong password should be at least 6 characters, and should be a combination of digits, lower case and upper case letters and symbols.

# Lock Screen

Users can lock Vinchin Backup Server web console from here, authentication will be required to unlock.

# About

On the About page, users can get the system information and Vinchin contact information, and can follow us on social media, and also can participate in our user experience survey to help us to improve our products and services.

# Logout

Users can sign out the current user login from here.

# vinchin

# **Contact Information**

#### Head Office

F5, Block 8, National Information Security Industry Park, No.333 YunHua Road, High-Tech Zone, Chengdu, China. P.C.610041

#### Sales

Tel: +86-135-5029-3426 Email: sales@vinchin.com

#### Support

Tel: +86-159-2884-8843 Email: technical\_support@vinchin.com

#### Website

www.vinchin.com